Course File

Name of the subject: **DIGITAL ELECTRONICS (DE)**

Name of the Faculty: **G Prasanna Kumar**

Department of Electronics & Communication Engineering

MALLA REDDY ENGINEERING COLLEGE (Autonomous)

(Approved by AICTE & Affiliated to JNTUH)

Maisammaguda, Dhulapally (Post via Kompally), Secunderabad-500 100

www.mrec.ac.inE-mail: mrec.2002@gmail.com

Malla Reddy Engineering College (Autonomous)

Maisammaguda.

Theory Course File Index

Subject **:DIGITAL ELECTRONICS**
Staff Incharge **:G Prasanna Kumar**

S.No.	Content
1.	Nominal Roll
2.	Syllabus
3.	Lesson Plan
4.	Class Timetable
5.	Individual Timetable
6.	Lecture Notes -5 Units
7.	Assignment/Tutorial Questions
8.	Sample Assignments/Tutorial papers and Tutorial Marks
9.	Question Bank
10.	Mid – I & II Exam Question Paper
11.	Mid – I & II Exam answer key
12.	Mid – I & II Exam Mark statement
13.	Mid – I& II Exam Sample Answer papers 3(Best, Average & Below Average)
14.	Internal Marks – Final
15.	Question Bank for five modules
16.	Attendance Register with complete update
17.	Content Beyond the Syllabus
18.	Previous Year Question Papers
19.	Course Outcome (CO) Attainment Calculation

Staff In-charge Verified By HOD Principal

	MALLA REDDY ENGINEERING COLLEGE (Autonomous)	B.Tech.		
	DIGITAL ELECTRONICS	**L**	**T**	**P**
Credits: 3		**2**	**1**	**-**

Pre-Requisites: Nil

Course Objectives: This course introduces various number systems and conversion from one number system to other and also to understand different binary codes**,** the theory ofBoolean algebra and to study representation of switching functions using Booleanexpressions and their minimization techniques. Understanding the combinational logicdesign of various logic and switching devices and their realization**,** the basic flip flopsand sequential logic circuits design both in synchronous and Asynchronous modes forvarious complex logic and switching devices, their minimization techniques and theirrealizations and to analyze a given sequential circuit by using state tables and statediagrams.

MODULE I: Number systems& Binary codes [8 Periods]

Number systems: Number Systems, Radix conversions, complement of numbers.

Binary codes: Binary codes, Weighted and non-Weighted codes, BCD code, gray code, excess 3 codes - Error detecting code, Error Correcting code, Hamming Code.

MODULE II: Boolean Algebra & Boolean functions [10 Periods]

Boolean Algebra: Postulates and Theorems - Canonical and Standard forms: SOP and POS forms, Minterms and Maxterms –Logic gates: NOT, OR, AND, NOR, NAND,XOR, XNOR - Universal gates

Simplification of Boolean functions: Simplification of functions: Karnaughmap (2,3,4,5,6 Variables) and Quine McCluskey method (Tabular Method) – Primeimplicants, essential prime implicants.

MODULE III: Combinational Logic Circuits [10 Periods]

A: Arithmetic circuits: Half adder, full adder, half subtractor, full subtractor, binaryadder, Carry look ahead adder, BCD adder

B: Code conversion circuits, Comparator, Decoder, Encoder, Priority Encoder,Multiplexers and Design, De – Multiplexers, ROM, PLA, PAL.

MODULE IV: Sequential Logic Circuits - I [10 Periods]

Introduction ‑Latches and Flip flops: Basic Flip flop circuit, RS, D, JK and T Flip-flops– Triggering of Flip flops: Master Slave Flip flop, edge triggered flip flop – Conversionof one type of Flip flop to another,Setup time, hold time.

Registers and Counters: Shift Register, Universal Shift Register, Applications of Registers, Asynchronous counter, Synchronous counter, Mod-N Counter, binary up/downcounter, Ripple counter, Johnson counter.

MODULE V: Sequential Logic Circuits - II [10 Periods]

Analysis of Sequential Logic circuit: State Diagram, state table, reduction of statetable, state Assignment –- Design procedure of sequential circuits using state diagram,state table and Flip flops. Example design Sequence detector.

Finite State Machine: Introduction, FSM capabilities and Limitations, Mealy and Mooremodels – minimization of completely specified and incompletely specified sequentialMachines. Partition techniques and Merger charts

Text Books:

1. ZviKohavi, “Switching and Finite Automata Theory”,TMH, 2nd edition, 2006.
2. Morris Mano, “Digital Design”, PHI, 3rd Edition, 2009.
3. A.Anand Kumar, “Switching Theory and Logic Design”, PHI 2nd Edition, 2014.
4. John F.Wakerly, “Digital Design Principles & Practices”, PHI/ Pearson Education Asia, 3rd Ed., 2005.

Reference Books:

1. Stephen Brown and Zvonka Vramesic, “Fundamentals of Digital Logic with VHDL Design”, McGraw Hill, 2nd Edition, 2008.
2. William I. Fletcher, “An Engineering Approach to Digital Design”, PHI, 1st Edition, 2009.

E-Resources:

1. https://www.researchgate.net/publication/264005171_Digital_Electronics
2. https://www.cl.cam.ac.uk/teaching/0708/DigElec/Digital_Electronics_pdf.pdf
3. http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/abstract/document/753678/
4. http://docshare01.docshare.tips/files/20257/202573063.pdf
1. http://nptel.ac.in/courses/117106086/1
2. http://nptel.ac.in/courses/117105080/
3. http://nptel.ac.in/courses/117106114/

Course Outcomes:

At the end of the course, students will be able to

1. Perform radix conversions
2. Minimize a given boolean function by using k-map or tabular method
3. Design a combinational circuit
4. Design a sequential circuit by using various flipflops
5. Analyze and minimize the circuitry of a given sequential circuit and will be able to design a sequence detector

CO- PO, PSO Mapping

(3/2/1 indicates strength of correlation) 3-Strong, 2-Medium, 1-Weak

COS	Programme Outcomes(POs)												PSOS		
	PO1	PO2	PO3	PO4	PO5	PO6	PO7	PO8	PO9	PO10	PO11	PO12	PSO1	PSO2	PSO3
CO1	2	1		1	1								2	2	1
CO2	2	3	3	1	1					1			3	2	2
CO3	3	2	3	2		1	1			1	2	1	3	3	2
CO4	2	2	3	3	1	1	1			1	3	1	2	2	2
CO5	1	1	3	3	1	1	1			1	3	1	3	2	2

MALLA REDDY ENGINEERING COLLEGE (AUTONOMOUS) SECUNDERABAD-500100
DEPARTMENT OF ECE

LESSON PLAN

Department :	ECE		
Course Title :	Digital Electronics	**Course Code**	
Compulsory / Elective :	**Compulsory**		
Prerequisites Knowledge			
Duration :	4 Months	**Credit Units :**	3
Class / Laboratory Schedule :	2/1/0 [L T P]		
Curriculum gap :		Matching POs and PSOs	
		PO: YES PSO: YES	
Course Objectives:	To **provide the knowledge** of Basic Number Systems and Boolean Algebra, as well as solve problems in minimizing the functions using different laws and theorems. To introduce students the basic methodology **to perform analysis** of different combinational circuits. To make the students understand the **basic concepts of designing** of combinational Circuits as well as Multi-Output Minimization. To make the students understand the **difference between Combinational and Sequential Circuits** To make the students **Analyze and Design Sequential Circuits**and apply them to different areas of Communication Engineering.		
Course Outcomes:	1.Perform radix conversions 2. Minimize a given boolean function by using k-map or tabular method 3. Design a combinational circuit 4. Design a sequential circuit by using various flipflops 5. Analyze and minimize the circuitry of a given sequential circuit and will be able to design a sequence detector		
Texts & References: ***(*recommended text book(s))***	**Text Books:** 1. ZviKohavi, "Switching and Finite Automata Theory",TMH, 2nd edition, 2006. 2. Morris Mano, "Digital Design", PHI, 3rd Edition, 2009. 3. A.Anand Kumar, "Switching Theory and Logic Design", PHI 2nd Edition, 2014. 4. John F.Wakerly, "Digital Design Principles & Practices", PHI/ Pearson Education Asia, 3rd Ed., 2005. **Reference Books:** 1. Stephen Brown and Zvonka Vramesic, "Fundamentals of Digital Logic with VHDL		

	Design", McGraw Hill, 2nd Edition, 2008. 2. William I. Fletcher, "An Engineering Approach to Digital Design", PHI, 1st Edition,
Student Assessments:	• Assignments • Mid test I and II • Final examination
Outcome Assessment	• Assignments and examinations • Course evaluation

Strength: 1- Weak 2 -Moderate 3-Strong

CO	PO1	PO2	PO3	PO4	PO5	PO6	PO7	PO8	PO9	PO10	PO11	PO12
CO1	2	1		1	1							
CO2	2	3	3	1	1					1		
CO3	3	2	3	2		1	1			1	2	1
CO4	2	2	3	3	1	1	1			1	3	1
CO5	1	1	3	3	1	1	1			1	3	1

Strength: 1- Weak 2 -Moderate 3-Strong

CO	PSO1	PSO2	PSO3
CO1	2	2	1
CO2	3	2	2
CO3	3	3	2
CO4	2	2	2
CO5	3	2	2

Theory Class:						
Module - I					**Target Hours 8**	
Sl. No	**Date**	**Period Reqd.**	Topics to be Covered	**Ref. Book.**	**Date of completion**	**Remarks**
1	8/07/19	1	Introduction	Morris Mano		
2	9/07/19	1	Number Systems	Morris Mano		
3	10/07/19	1	Radix conversions	Anand Kumar		
4	11/07/19	1	complement of numbers	Anand Kumar		
5	15/07/19	1	Binary codes, Weighted and non-Weighted codes	Morris Mano		
6	16/07/19	1	BCD code, gray code, excess 3 codes	Morris Mano		
7	17/07/19	1	Error detecting code, Error Correcting code, Hamming Code	Anand Kumar		
8	18/07/19	1	**Revision Using PPT'S**	Morris Mano		
Theory Class:						
Module - II					**Target Hours 10**	
Sl. No	**Date**	**Period Reqd.**	Topics to be Covered	**Ref. Book.**	**Actual Date of completion**	**Remarks**
1	22/07/19	1	Boolean Algebra: Postulates and Theorems	Morris Mano		
2	23/07/19	1	Simplification of Boolean functions using boolean algebra	Anand Kumar		
3	24/07/19	1	Canonical and Standard forms: SOP and POS forms, Minterms and Maxterms	Morris Mano		
4	25/07/19	1	Logic gates: NOT, OR, AND, NOR, NAND, XOR, XNOR	Morris Mano		
5	29/07/19	1	Universal gates	Anand Kumar		
6	30/07/19	1	Simplification of Boolean functions: Karnaugh map(2,3,4 Variables)	Anand Kumar		
7	31/07/19	1	Simplification of Boolean functions: Karnaugh map(5,6 Variables)	Morris Mano		
8	1/08/19	1	Karnaugh map Problems	Anand Kumar		
9	5/08/19	1	QuineMcCluskey method (Tabular Method	Morris Mano		
10	6/8/19	1	QuineMcCluskey method (Tabular Method) -- Prime implicants, essential prime implicants, **Revision Using PPT'S**	Morris Mano		

Theory Class:						
Module - III					**Target Hours 10**	
Sl. No	**Date**	**Period Reqd.**	Topics to be Covered	**Ref. Book.**	**Date of completion**	**Remarks**

1	7/08/19	1	Half adder, Full adder	Morris Mano		
2	8/08/19	1	Half Subtractor, Full Subtractor	Morris Mano		
3	13/08/19	1	binary adder	Morris Mano		
4	14/08/19	1	Carry look ahead adder, BCD adder	Anand Kumar		
5	19/08/19	1	Code conversion circuits	Morris Mano		
6	21/08/19	1	Comparator, Decoder	Morris Mano		
7	22/08/19	1	Encoder, Priority Encoder	Anand Kumar		
8	26/08/19	1	Multiplexers and implementation of a Boolean function using Multiplexers, De – Multiplexers	Morris Mano		
9	27/08/19	1	ROM	Morris Mano		
10	28/08/19	1	PLA ,PAL	Morris Mano		
11	29/08/19	1	**Revision Using PPT'S**	Anand Kumar		

Theory Class:						
Module - IV				**Target Hours 10**		
Sl. No	**Date**	**Period Reqd.**	Topics to be Covered	**Ref. Book.**	**Date of completion**	**Remarks**
1	12/09/19	1	Introduction, Basic Flip flop circuit	Anand Kumar		
2	16/09/19	1	RS, D, JK and T Flip-flops, Triggering of Flip flops	Morris Mano		
3	17/09/19	1	Master Slave Flip flop,Edge triggered flip flop, Setup time, hold time	Anand Kumar		
4	18/09/19	1	Conversion of one type of Flip flop to another	Morris Mano		
5	19/09/19	1	Registers	Morris Mano		
6	23/09/19	1	Universal Shift Rgisters	Anand Kumar		
7	24/09/19	1	Ripple counter	Anand Kumar		
8	25/09/19	1	Synchronous counter	Morris Mano		
9	26/09/19	1	binary up/down counter	Morris Mano		
10	30/09/19	1	Johnson counter	Anand Kumar		
11	1/10/19	1	**Revision Using PPT'S**			

Theory Class:						
Module - V				**Target Hours 10**		
Sl.	**Date**	**Period Reqd.**	Topics to be Covered	**Ref. Book**	**Date of**	**Remarks**

No					completion	
1	3/10/19	1	Analysis of Sequential Logic circuit: State Diagram, state table	Morris Mano		
2	14/10/19	1	Reduction of state table and state assignment	Morris Mano		
3	15/10/19	1	Design procedure of sequential circuits using state diagram, state table and Flip flops	Morris Mano		
4	16/10/19	1	Design procedure of sequential circuits using state diagram, state table and Flip flops	Anand Kumar		
5	17/10/19	1	Example design Sequence detector	Morris Mano		
6	18/10/19	1	Finite State Machine: Introduction, FSM capabilities and Limitations	Anand Kumar		
7	21/10/19	1	Mealy and Moore models	Morris Mano		
8	22/10/19	1	minimization of completely specified sequential Machines	Morris Mano		
9	23/10/19	1	minimization of completely incompletely specified sequential Machines,	Morris Mano		
10	24/10/19	1	**Revision Using PPT'S**			

FACULTY IN-CHARGE **HOD/ECE**

Malla Reddy Engineering College (Autonomous)

II B.TECH - I Semester (MR18) I MID EXAMNATIONS-Sep-2019

Subject:**Digital Electronics**

Branch: ECE & EEE **Name of the Faculty: G Prasanna Kumar**

Compulsory Questions

Module – I

1. Define and explain basic Number System and different types of Number Systems with example
2. Convert the following number according to their Radix
   i)$(11011.101)_2$ - ($)_{10}$
3. Find the r's complement and (r-1)'s complement of the give binary numbers 01011010 and 00011011
4. Differentiate between Binary to Gray and Gray to Binary conversions with examples
5. Perform the following signed-number arithmetic using 8-bits
   +7+14
6. What is a Parity and Hamming Code.

Module – II

1. Minimize the following function by using Boolean algebra theorems and rules
   F= A[B+C(AB+AC)]
2. Create XOR gate functionality by using NAND gate
3. Minimize the following expression using K-Map
   F=Σm(0,2,3,4,5,6)
4. What is K-Map.
5. Define Logic Gates
6. Define consensus Theorem

Module – III

1. Design a Half Adders
2. Design a 2-4 Decoder.
3. What is Priority Encoder.

Choice Questions

Module-I

1. Perform each of the following decimal subtraction in Excess -3 code by using 9's compliment methods
   i) 879 – 4562 ii) 319 - 645
2. a) Convert (9B2.1A) hexadecimal to its decimal equivalent
   b) Convert 101101.1101 binary to its octal equivalent
3. Determine the single error correcting code for the information code 10111 for odd parity
4. a) Write short notes on gray code and give advantage of gray code
   b) Convert gray code 101011 into its binary equivalent
   c) Convert 10111011 in binary into its equivalent gray code
5. Explain about Error detecting and correcting code and also write short notes on parity and hamming code
6. Assume that the even parity. hamming code in example (0110011) is transmitted & that (0100011) is received. The receiver does not know what was transmitted. Determine bit location where error has occurred using received code & decode the message.

Module- II

1. Solve the following functions by using Boolean algebra theorems and rules

a)F= A[B+C(AB'+AC')]

b)F=AB+AC+A'BC'(AB+C)

c)Σm=(1,3,5,7)

2.Reduce the following Boolean expression into minimal literals

a) $A^{!}C^{!}+ABC+AC^{!}$

b) $ABC+A^{!}B+ABC^{!}$

c) $A^{!}B(D^{!}+C^{!}D)+B(A+A^{!}CD)$

3.Reduce the following four variable function to its minimum sum of products form

$Y = A^{!}B^{!}CD^{!} + ABCD^{!} + AB^{!}CD + AB^{!}C^{!}D^{!} + ABC^{!}D^{!} + A^{!}B^{!}CD + A^{!}B^{!}C^{!}D^{!}$

4.Reduce the following function using K- Map technique

f(A,B,C,D) = πM(0,2,3,8,9,12,13,15)

5.Reduce the following function using K Map technique & implement by using gates

f(A,B,C,D) = Σm (5,67,12,13) + Σd (4,9,14,15)

6.Reduce the following function using K Map technique & implement by using gates

f(A,B,C,D) = Σ (8,9,10,11,13,15,16,18,21,24,25,26,27,30,31

Module III

1. Explain the Half Adder circuit with neat Sketch
2. Explain the Full Adder circuit with neat Sketch.
3. Draw the circuit for full Subtractor and Explain it

Signature of the Faculty **Signature of HOD**

Malla Reddy Engineering College (Autonomous)

II B.TECH - I Semester (MR18) I MID EXAMNATIONS-Sep-2019

Subject:**Digital Electronics**

Branch**: ECE** Name of the Faculty: G Prasanna Kumar

1	**Convert the following decimal number to 8-bit binary.187**	**A**
	101110112	
	110111012	
	101111012	
	101111002	
2	**Convert binary 111111110010 to hexadecimal.**	**A**
	EE216	
	FF216	

	2FE16	
	FD216	
3	Convert the binary number 1001.00102 to decimal.	B
	90.125	
	9.125	
	125	
	12.5	
4	Convert 59.7210 to BCD.	B
	111011	
	01011001.01110010	
	1110.11	
	0101100101110010	
5	Convert 8B3F16 to binary.	D
	35647	
	011010	
	1011001111100011	
	1000101100111111	
6	Which is typically the longest: bit, byte, nibble, word?	D
	Bit	
	Byte	
	Nibble	
	Word	
7	If a typical PC uses a 20-bit address code, how much memory can the CPU address?	C
	20 MB	
	10 MB	
	1 MB	
	580 MB	
8	Which of the following is the most widely used alphanumeric code for computer input and output?	B
	Gray	
	ASCII	
	Parity	
	EBCDIC	
9	Assign the proper odd parity bit to the code 111001.	B
	1111011	
	1111001	
	0111111	
	0011111	
10	Convert decimal 64 to binary.	B
	01010010	
	01000000	
	00110110	
	01001000	
11	Convert hexadecimal value C1 to binary.	A
	11000001	
	1000111	
	111000100	
	111000001	
12	Convert the following octal number to decimal.	D
	51	
	82	
	57	
	15	

13	Convert the following binary number to octal. 0101111002	D
	1728	
	2728	
	1748	
	2748	
14	The sum of 11101 + 10111 equals _____.	C
	110011	
	100001	
	110100	
	100100	
15	The decimal number 188 is equal to the binary number	A
	10111100	
	0111000	
	1100011	
	1111000	
16	How many bits are in an ASCII character?	D
	16	
	10	
	8	
	7	
17	Convert 11001010001101012 to hexadecimal	B
	121035	
	CA35	
	53AC1	
	530121	
18	Convert the following decimal number to octal.281	B
	1348	
	4318	
	3318	
	1338	
19	When using even parity, where is the parity bit placed?	A
	Before the MSB	
	After the LSB	
	In the parity word	
	After the odd parity bit	
20	An analog signal has a range from 0 V to 5 V. What is the total number of analog possibilities within this range?	D
	100	
	5	
	200	
	Infinite	
21	Hexadecimal letters A through F are used for decimal equivalent values from	C
	1 through 6	
	9 through 14	
	10 through 15	
	11 through 17	
22	A decimal 11 in BCD is _____	C
	00001011	
	00001100	
	00010001	
	00010010	
23	What is the resultant binary of the decimal problem 49 + 01 = ?	C
	01010101	

	00110101	
	00110010	
	00110001	
24	The difference of 111 – 001 equals _____.	C
	100	
	111	
	110	
	101	
25	Convert the binary number 1100 to Gray code	B
	0011	
	1010	
	1100	
	1001	
26	The binary number 11101011000111010 can be written in hexadecimal as _____	B
	DD63A16	
	1D63A16	
	1D33A16	
	1D63116	
27	Which of the following is an invalid BCD code?	B
	0011	
	1101	
	0101	
	1001	
28	What decimal number does 25 represent?	D
	10	
	31	
	64	
	32	
29	Convert the Gray code 1011 to binary	D
	1011	
	1010	
	0100	
	1101	
30	The 1's complement of 10011101 is _____.	A
	01100010	
	10011110	
	01100001	
	01100011	
31	Convert the decimal number 151.75 to binary.	D
	10000111.11	
	11010011.01	
	00111100.00	
	10010111.11	
32	3428 is the decimal value for which of the following binary-coded decimal (BCD) groupings?	B
	11010001001000	
	11010000101000	
	011010010000010	
	110100001101010	
33	The binary-coded decimal (BCD) system can be used to represent each of the 10 decimal digits as a(n):	A
	4-bit binary code	
	8-bit binary code	
	16-bit binary code	

	none	
34	The 2's complement of 11100111 is _____	B
	11100110	
	00011001	
	00011000	
	00011010	
35	Express the decimal number –37 as an 8-bit number in sign-magnitude.	A
	10100101	
	00100101	
	11011000	
	11010001	
36	The American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) uses how many individual pulses for any given character?	C
	1	
	2	
	7	
	8	
37	The weight of the LSB as a binary number is	A
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
38	The base of the hexadecimal system is	C
	1	
	8	
	16	
	32	
39	Assign the proper even parity bit to the code 1100001	A
	11100001	
	1100001	
	01100001	
	01110101	
40	Which of the following is the primary advantage of using the BCD code instead of straight binary coding?	B
	Fewer bits are required to represent a decimal number with the BCD code.	
	The relative ease of converting to and from decimal.	
	BCD codes are easily converted to hexadecimal codes.	
	BCD codes are easily converted to straight binary codes.	
41	What is the decimal value of the hexadecimal number 777?	B
	191	
	1911	
	19	
	19111	
42	Convert the following BCD number to decimal. 010101101001bcd	C
	539	
	2551	
	569	
	1552	
43	What is the result when a decimal 5238 is converted to base 16?	D
	327.375	
	12.166	
	1388	
	1476	

44	Digital electronics is based on the _____ numbering system	C
	decimal	
	octal	
	binary	
	hexadecimal	
45	An informational signal that makes use of binary digits is considered to be	B
	solid state	
	digital	
	analog	
	non-oscillating	
46	The binary number 101110101111010 can be written in octal as _____	D
	515628	
	565778	
	656278	
	565728	
47	Convert 45710 to hexadecimal	D
	711	
	2C7	
	811	
	1C9	
48	Determine the decimal equivalent of the signed binary number 11110100 in 1's complement.	C
	116	
	–12	
	11	
	128	
49	What is the base value in octal code	B
	2	
	8	
	16	
	10	
50	What is the base value in decimal code	D
	2	
	8	
	16	
	10	
51	An n variable K-map can have	B
	n^2 cells	
	2^n cells	
	n^n cells	
	n^{2n} cells	
52	Each term in the standard SOP form is called a	A
	minterm	
	maxterm	
	don’t care	
	literal	
53	Each term in the standard POS form is called a	B
	minterm	
	maxterm	
	don’t care	
	literal	
54	The binary number designations of the rows and columns of the K-map are in	C
	binary code	

	BCD code	
	Gray code	
	Excess-3 code	
55	An 8-square eliminates	B
	2 variables	
	3 variables	
	4 variables	
	8 variables	
56	The terms which cannot be combined further in the tabular method are called	B
	implicants	
	prime implicants	
	essential prime implicants	
	selective prime implicants	
57	The implicants which will definitely occur in the final expression are called	B
	prime implicants	
	essential prime implicants	
	selective prime implicants	
	redundant prime implicants	
58	The number of cells in a 6 variable K-map is	D
	6	
	12	
	36	
	64	
59	The Quine-McClusky method of minimization of a logic expression is a (i)Graphical method (ii) Algebraic method (iii) Tabular method (iv) A computer-oriented method	A
	(iii) and (iv)	
	(ii) and (iv)	
	(i) and (iii)	
	(i) and (ii)	
60	In simplification of a Boolean function of n variables, a group of 2m adjacent 1s leads to a term with	D
	m-1 literals less than the total number of variables	
	m+1 literals less than the total number of variables	
	n+m literals	
	n-m literals	
61	The number of adjacent cells each cell in an n variable K-map can have is	B
	n-1	
	n	
	n+1	
	2n	
62	A 16-square eliminates	C
	2 variables	
	3 variables	
	4 variables	
	8 variables	
63	In K-map simplification, a group of four adjacent 1s leads to a term with	B
	One literal less than the total number of variables	
	Two literals less than the total number of variables	
	Three literals less than the total number of variables	
	Four literals less than the total number of variables	
64	The NAND-NAND realization is equivalent to	B
	AND-NOT realization	
	AND-OR realization	

	OR-AND realization	
	NOT-OR realization	
65	The NOR-NOR realization is equivalent to	D
	AND-OR realization	
	NOT-AND realization	
	OR-NOT realization	
	OR-AND realization	
66	AND-OR realization of a combinational circuit is equivalent to	B
	NAND-NOR realization	
	NAND-NAND realization	
	NOR-NOR realization	
	NOR-NAND realization	
67	OR- AND realization of a combinational circuit is equivalent to	D
	NAND-NOR realization	
	NAND-NAND realization	
	NOR-NAND realization	
	NOR-NOR realization	
68	A combinational circuit can be designed using only	D
	AND gates	
	OR gates	
	OR and X-NOR gates	
	NOR gates	
69	A combinational circuit can be designed using only	D
	AND gates	
	OR gates	
	OR and X-NOR gates	
	NAND gates	
70	The NAND gate can function as a NOT gate if	A
	All inputs are connected together	
	Inputs are left open	
	One input is set to 0	
	One input is set to 1	
71	The NOR gate can function as a NOT gate if	A
	All inputs are connected together	
	Inputs are left open	
	One input is set to 0	
	One input is set to 1	
72	An Exclusive-NOR gate is logically equivalent to	B
	Inverter followed by an X-OR gate	
	X-OR gate followed by an inverter	
	NOT gate followed by an X-OR gate	
	Complement of a NOR gate	
73	Which of the following is known as a mod-2 adder?	A
	X-OR gate	
	X-NOR gate	
	NAND gate	
	NOR gate	
74	What is the minimum number of two-input NAND gates used to perform the function of 2-input OR gate?	C
	One	
	Two	
	Three	
	Four	

75	NOT gates are to be added to the inputs of which gate to convert it to a NAND gate?	A
	OR	
	AND	
	NOT	
	X-OR	
76	NOT gates are to be added to the inputs of which gate to convert it to a NOR gate?	B
	OR	
	AND	
	NOT	
	X-OR	
77	What logic function is produced by adding inverters to the inputs of an AND gate?	B
	OR	
	NOR	
	NAND	
	X-OR	
78	What logic function is produced by adding inverters to the inputs of an OR gate?	B
	NOR	
	NAND	
	AND	
	X-NOR	
79	What logic function is produced by adding an inverter to each input and output of an AND gate?	D
	NOR	
	NAND	
	X-OR	
	OR	
80	What logic function is produced by adding an inverter to each input and output of an OR gate?	C
	NAND	
	NOR	
	AND	
	X-OR	
81	How many NOR gates are required to obtain AND operation?	B
	2	
	3	
	4	
	1	
82	What is the minimum number of NAND gates required to realize an X-OR gate?	B
	3	
	4	
	5	
	6	
83	What is the minimum number of NOR gates required to realize an X-OR gate?	C
	3	
	4	
	5	
	6	
84	A bubbled AND gate is equivalent to	C
	OR gate	
	NAND gate	
	NOR gate	
	X-OR gate	
85	A bubbled OR gate is equivalent to	B
	AND gate	

	NAND gate	
	NOR gate	
	X-OR gate	
86	A bubbled NAND gate is equivalent to	A
	OR gate	
	NAND gate	
	NOR gate	
	X-OR gate	
87	A bubbled NOR gate is equivalent to	A
	AND gate	
	NAND gate	
	NOR gate	
	X-OR gate	
88	The output of logic gate is LOW when atleast one of its inputs is HIGH. This is true for	C
	AND	
	NAND	
	NOR	
	OR	
89	The output of logic gate is HIGH when atleast one of its inputs is LOW. This is true for	B
	X-OR	
	NAND	
	NOR	
	OR	
90	The output of logic gate is LOW if and only if all its inputs are HIGH. This is true for	D
	AND	
	X-NOR	
	NOR	
	NAND	
91	The output of logic gate is HIGH if and only if all its inputs are LOW. This is true for	A
	NOR	
	X-OR	
	NAND	
	X-NOR	
92	The most suitable gate for comparing two bits is	D
	AND	
	OR	
	NAND	
	X-OR	
93	Which of the following gates cannot be used as an inverter?	B
	NAND	
	AND	
	NOR	
	X-NOR	
94	The output of a logic gate is 1 when all its inputs are at logic 1. The gate is either	B
	a NAND or a NOR	
	an AND or an OR	
	an OR or an X-OR	
	an AND or a NOR	
95	The output of a logic gate is 1 when all its inputs are at logic 0. The gate is either	A
	a NAND or a NOR	
	an AND or an X-NOR	
	an OR or a NAND	
	an X-OR or an X-NOR	

96	For checking the parity of a digital word, it is preferable to use	C
	AND gates	
	NAND gates	
	X-OR gates	
	NOR gates	
97	The most suitable gate to check whether the number of 1s in a digital word is even or odd is	A
	X-OR	
	NAND	
	NOR	
	AND, OR and NOT	
98	A+AB+ABC+ABCD+ABCDE+…… =	B
	1	
	A	
	A+AB	
	AB	
99	The dual of a Boolean expression is obtained by	B
	Interchanging all 0s and 1s	
	Interchanging all 0s and 1s, all + and '.' signs	
	Interchanging all 0s and 1s, all + and '.' signs and complementing all the variables	
	Interchanging all + and '.' Signs and complementing all the variables	
100	The complement of a Boolean expression is obtained by	C
	Interchanging all 0s and 1s	
	Interchanging all 0s and 1s, all + and '.' signs	
	Interchanging all 0s and 1s, all + and '.' signs and complementing all the variables	
	Interchanging all + and '.' Signs and complementing all the variables	
101	The difference output in a full-subtractor is the same as the	C
	Difference output of a half-subtractor	
	Sum output of a half-adder	
	Sum output of a full-adder	
	Carry output of a full-adder	
102	on inputs, and produces two binary digits, a sum bit and a carry bit on its outputs?	B
	Full-adder	
	Half-adder	
	Serial adder	
	Parallel adder	
103	How many inputs and outputs does a full-adder have?	C
	Two inputs, two outputs	
	Two inputs, one output	
	Three inputs, two outputs	
	Two inputs, three outputs	
104	How many inputs and outputs does a full-subtractor have?	D
	Two inputs, one outputs	
	Two inputs, two output	
	Two inputs, three outputs	
	Three inputs, two outputs	
105	A full-adder can be realized using	B
	One half-adder, two OR gates	
	Two half-adders, one OR gate	
	Two half-adders, two OR gates	
	Two half-adders, one AND gate	
106	The minimum number of 2-input NAND/NOR gates required to realize a half-adder is	C
	3	

	4	
	5	
	6	
107	The minimum number of 2-input NAND/NOR gates required to realize a half-subtractor is	C
	3	
	4	
	5	
	6	
108	The minimum number of 2-input NAND gates required to realize a full-adder/full-subtractor is	B
	8	
	9	
	10	
	12	
109	The minimum number of 2-input NOR gates required to realize a full-sbtractor is	D
	8	
	9	
	10	
	12	
110	How many full-adders are required to construct an m-bit parallel adder?	B
	m/2	
	m-1	
	m	
	m+1	
111	Parallel adders are	A
	Combinational logic circuits	
	Sequential logic circuits	
	Both of the above	
	None of the above	
112	In which of the following adder circuits is the carry ripple delay eliminated?	D
	Half-adder	
	Full-adder	
	Parallel adder	
	Carry-look-ahead-adder	
113	To secure a higher speed of addition, which of the following is the preferred solution?	C
	serial-adder	
	parallel-adder	
	Adder with a look-ahead-carry	
	Full-adder	
114	A parallel adder in which the carry-out of each full-adder is the carry-in to the next significant digital adder is called a	A
	Ripple carry adder	
	Look-ahead-carry adder	
	Serial-carry adder	
	Parallel carry adder	
115	A serial adder requires only one	B
	Half-adder	
	Full-adder	
	Counter	
	Multiplier	
116	In digital systems subtraction is performed	C
	Using half-adders	
	Using half-subtractors	

	Using adders with 1's complement representation of negative numbers	
	None of the above	
117	In BCD addition, 0110 is required to be added to the sum for getting the correct result if	B
	The sum of two BCD numbers is not a valid BCD number	
	The sum of two BCD numbers is not a valid BCD number or a carry is produced	
	A carry is produced	
	None of the above	
118	BCD subtraction is performed by using	D
	1's complement representation	
	2's complement representation	
	5's complement representation	
	9's complement representation	
119	Which logic gate is a basic comparator	D
	NOR	
	NAND	
	X-OR	
	X-NOR	
120	The logic gate used in parity checkers is	C
	NAND	
	NOR	
	X-OR	
	X-NOR	
121	Which of the following statements accurately represents the two BEST methods of logic circuit simplification?	A
	Boolean algebra and Karnaugh mapping	
	Karnaugh mapping and circuit waveform analysis	
	Actual circuit trial and error evaluation and waveform analysis	
	Boolean algebra and actual circuit trial and error evaluation	
122	The binary numbers A =1100 and B = 1001 are applied to the inputs of a comparator. What are the output levels?	C
	A > B = 1, A < B = 0, A < B = 1	
	A > B = 0, A < B = 1, A = B = 0	
	A > B = 1, A < B = 0, A = B = 0	
	A > B = 0, A < B = 1, A = B = 1	
123	Two 4-bit binary numbers (1011 and 1111) are applied to a 4-bit parallel adder. The carry input is 1. What are the values for the sum and carry output?	C
	Σ4Σ3Σ2Σ1 = 0111, Cout = 0	
	Σ4Σ3Σ2Σ1 = 1111, Cout = 1	
	Σ4Σ3Σ2Σ1 = 1011, Cout = 1	
	Σ4Σ3Σ2Σ1 = 1100, Cout = 1	
124	The carry propagation can be expressed as	B
	Cp = AB	
	Cp = A + B	
	$C_p = A \oplus B$	
	$C_p = A + \overline{B}$	
125	How many 4-bit parallel adders would be required to add two binary numbers each representing decimal numbers up through 30010?	C
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	

MALLA REDDY ENGINEERING COLLEGE (AUTONOMOUS)

II B.Tech I Semester II Mid Question Bank 2019-20

Subject: Digital Electronics **Branch:ECE**

Name of the Faculty: G Prasanna Kumar

Compulsory Questions

MODULE-III

1. Define Encoder?
2. List basic types of programmable logic devices
3. Explain the any two code converters

MODULE-IV

1. Give the comparison between combinational circuits and sequential circuits.
2. What are the classification of sequential circuits?
3. What are the different types of flip-flop?
4. Draw the logic diagram for SR latch using two NOR gates.
5. Define skew and clock skew.
6. What are the different types of shift type?

MODULE-V

1. What is state equivalence theorem ?
2. What do you mean by distinguishing sequences?
3. Define FSM
4. Define merger graph.
5. Define incompatibility
6. Define state table.

Choice Questions

MODULE-III

1. Draw the logic diagram for 2-bit magnitude Comparator.
2. Draw the logic diagram for BCD-to-Seven Segment Decoder
3. Explain briefly Multiplexers and De-multiplexers with example problem.

MODULE-IV

1. Draw the circuit of master – slave JK flip flop and explain its operation with the help of truth table.
2. Classify the required circuits into synchronous, asynchronous, clock mode, pulse mode with suitable examples.
3. Convert the following
   a) JK Flip Flop to T Flip Flop
   b) RS Flip Flop to D Flip Flop
4. Explain about Universal shift register
5. Design a modulo -12 up synchronous counters using flip flops and draw the circuit diagram
6. Design a Modulo-9 counter T flip flops with preset and clear inputs.

MODULE-V

1. Convert the following Mealy machine into a corresponding Moore machine.

PS	NS,Z	
	X=0	**X=1**
A	B , 0	E , 0
B	E , 0	D , 0
C	D , 1	A , 0
D	C , 1	E , 0
E	B , 0	D, 0

2. Distinguish between the Mealy and Moore Machines, and draw the logic diagram for each model.

3. Design logic circuit for 4-input encoder with neat sketch.

4. Covert D-flip-flop to J-K-flip-flop

5. Write clearly finite state machine limitations and capability

6. Design procedure of sequential circuits using state diagram with example.

Signature of the Faculty **Signature of the HOD**

Malla Reddy Engineering College (Autonomous)

II B.TECH - I Semester (MR17) II MID EXAMNATIONS- -2019

Subject:**Digital Electronics**

Branch**: ECE & EEE** Name of the Faculty: Kalpana.B

1	Which sequential circuits generate the feedback path due to the cross-coupled connection from output of one gate to the input of another gate?	B
	Synchronous	
	Asynchronous	
	Both	

	None of the above	
2	What is/are the crucial function/s of memory elements used in the sequential circuits?	C
	Storage of binary information	
	Specify the state of sequential	
	Both a & b	
	None of the above	
3	How are the sequential circuits specified in terms of time sequence?	D
	By Inputs	
	By Outputs	
	By Internal states	
	All of the above	
4	The behavior of synchronous sequential circuit can be predicted by defining the signals at	A
	discrete instants of time	
	continuous instants of time	
	sampling instants of time	
	at any instant of time	
5	Which memory elements are utilized in an asynchronous & clocked sequential circuits respectively?	B
	Time- delay devices & registers	
	Time- delay devices & flip-flops	
	Time- delay devices & counters	
	Time-delay devices & latches	
6	Why do the D-flip-flops receives its designation or nomenclature as 'Data Flipflops' ?	C
	Due to its capability to receive data from flip-flop	
	Due to its capability to store data in flip-flop	
	Due to its capability to transfer the data into flip-flop	
	None of this	
7	The characteristic equation of D-flip-flop implies that	D
	the next state is dependent on previous state	
	the next state is dependent on present state	
	the next state is independent of previous state	
	the next state is independent of present stated	
8	Which circuit is generated from D-flip-flop due to addition of an inverter by causing reduction in the number of inputs?	D
	Gated JK- latch	
	Gated SR- latch	
	Gated T- latch	
	Gated D- latch	
9	What is the bit storage binary information capacity of any flip-flop?	A
	1 bit	
	2 bits	
	16 bits	
	infinite bits	
10	What is/are the directional mode/s of shifting the binary information in a shift register?	B
	Up-Down	
	Left - Right	
	Front - Back	
	All of the above	
11	Which time interval specify the shifting of overall contents of the shift registers?	C

	Bit time	
	Shift time	
	Word time	
	Code time	
12	A counter is fundamentally a _____ sequential circuit that proceeds through the predetermined sequence of states only when input pulses are applied to it.	C
	register	
	memory unit	
	Flip-flop	
	arithmetic logic unit	
13	What is the maximum possible range of bit-count specifically in n-bit binary counter consisting of 'n' number of flip-flops?	B
	0 to 2^n	
	0 to 2^{n-1}	
	0 to 2^{n+1}	
	0 to $2^{n+1/2}$	
14	Which property of unit distance counters has the potential to overcome the consequences of multi-bit change flashing that arises in almost all conventional binary and decimal counters?	A
	one bit change per unit change	
	two bits change per unit change	
	three bits change per unit change	
	four bits change per unit change	
15	What contributes to the triggering of clock pulse inputs for all the flip-flops excluding the first flip-flop in a ripple counter?	B
	Incoming Pulses	
	Output Transition	
	Double Clock Pulses	
	All of the above	
16	What is the required relationship between number of flip-flops and the timing signals in Johnson Counter?	A
	No. of flip-flops = 1/2 x No. of timing signals	
	No. of flip-flops = 2/3 x No. of timings signals	
	No. of flip-flops = 3/4 x No. of timing signals	
	No. of flip-flops = 4 x No. of timing signals	
17	Which clock pulses are generated by the microprocessor so as to handle the timing and control operations related to internal functioning level?	B
	single phase clock pulses	
	multi-phase clock pulses	
	anti-phase clock pulses	
	none of the above	
18	The bus-request control input of micro-processor indicates the temporary suspension of current operation by driving all buses into_____.	A
	high impedance state	
	low impedance state	
	both a & b	
	none of the above	
19	Which feature conducts the memory transfer by controlling the address and data buses on the basis of request originated by the device when buses get disabled by the microprocessor?	B
	Indirect Memory Access	

	Direct Memory Access	
	Read Memory Access	
	Write Memory Access	
20	By default counters are incremented by	A
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
21	Simplest registers only consists of	D
	counter	
	EPROM	
	latch	
	flip-flop	
22	Three decade counter would have	B
	2 BCD counters	
	3 BCD counters	
	4 BCD counters	
	5 BCD counters	
23	A decimal counter has	B
	5 states	
	10 states	
	15 states	
	20 states	
24	Memory that is called a read write memory is	C
	ROM	
	EPROM	
	RAM	
	Registers	
25	2 left shifts are referred to as multiplication with	B
	2	
	4	
	8	
	16	
26	Ripple counters are also called	B
	SSI counters	
	asynchronous counters	
	synchronous counters	
	VLSI counters	
27	Transformation to information into registers is called	A
	loading	
	gated latch	
	latch	
	storing	
28	Binary counter that count incrementally and decrementally is called	A
	up-down counter	
	LSI counters	
	down counter	
	up counter	
29	Shift registers having four bits will enable shift control signal for	C

	2 clock pulses	
	3 clock pulses	
	4 clock pulses	
	5 clock pulses	
30	A group of binary cells is called	B
	counter	
	register	
	latch	
	Flip-flop	
31	Synchronous counter is a type of	C
	SSI counters	
	LSI counters	
	MSI counters	
	VLSI counters	
32	BCD counter is also known as(B)	B
	parallel counter	
	decade counter	
	synchronous counter	
	VLSI counter	
33	A 8-bit flip-flop will have	D
	2binary cells	
	4binary cells	
	6binary cells	
	8binary cells	
34	Parallel load transfer is done in	A
	1 cycle	
	2 cycle	
	3 cycle	
	4 cycle	
35	To start counting enable input should be	B
	0	
	1	
	reset	
	clear	
36	Ripple counter cannot be described by	A
	Boolean equation	
	clock duration	
	graph	
	flow chart	
37	Time between clock pulses are called	D
	bit duration	
	clock duration	
	duration	
	bit time	
38	Parallel loading is done in	A
	1 cycle	
	2 cycle	
	3 cycle	
	4 cycle	

39	Control unit in serial computer generates a(B)	B
	reset signal	
	word-time signal	
	word signal	
	clear signal	
40	BCD counter counts from	C
	0 to 5	
	1 to 5	
	0 to 9	
	1 to 9	
41	J=K=0 will make flip-flops	C
	changed	
	reversed	
	unchanged	
	stopped	
42	Special type of registers are	C
	latch	
	Flip-flop	
	counters	
	memory	
43	Flip-flops in registers are	C
	present	
	level triggered	
	edge triggered	
	not present	
44	Down counter decrement value by	A
	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
45	Ripple counter is a type of	C
	SSI counters	
	LSI counters	
	MSI counters	
	VLSI counters	
46	Propagation of signal through counters is in	A
	ripple fashion	
	serial fashion	
	parallel fashion	
	both a and b	
47	Register shifting left and right both is called	B
	unidirectional shift register	
	bidirectional shift register	
	left shift register	
	right shift register	
48	A decimal counter has	C
	2 flip-flops	
	3 flip-flops	
	4 flip-flops	

	5 flip-flops	
49	Control variable of registers is also called	B
	store control input	
	load control input	
	store control output	
	load control output	
50	Time to transfer content of shift register is called	A
	word duration	
	clock duration	
	duration	
	bit time	
51	Code conversion circuits mostly uses	A
	AND-OR gates	
	AND gates	
	OR gates	
	XOR gates	
52	3 bits full adder contains	D
	3 combinational inputs	
	4 combinational inputs	
	6 combinational inputs	
	8 combinational inputs	
53	Nor function is dual of	D
	and function	
	or function	
	xor function	
	nand function	
54	Design procedure of combinational circuit involves	C
	4 steps	
	5 steps	
	6 steps	
	8 steps	
55	Simplified expression of half adder carry is	D
	c=xy+x	
	c=y+x	
	c=xy+y	
	c=xy	
56	When both inputs are 1 output of xor is	B
	1	
	0	
	X	
	10	
57	Simplified expression of full adder carry is	A
	c=xy+xz+yz	
	c=xy+xz	
	c=xy+yz	
	c=x+y+z	
58	Practical design procedure have some	C
	gate	
	circuits	

	constraints	
	protocols	
59	Subtractor also have output to check if 1 has been	B
	complemented	
	borrowed	
	shifted	
	primed	
60	Logic gates takes input signals and generates signals to	C
	within gate	
	input	
	output	
	both a and b	
61	Analysis of combinational circuits is	B
	lengthy process	
	reverse process	
	difficult process	
	invert process	
62	Two bit subtraction is done by	D
	demux	
	mux	
	full subtract or	
	half subtract or	
63	Dual of nand function is	C
	and function	
	or function	
	nor function	
	nand function	
64	In real design procedure we consider	B
	max no of gates	
	min no of gate	
	two gates	
	three gates	
65	Full adder performs addition on	B
	2 bits	
	3 bits	
	4 bits	
	5 bits	
66	When both inputs are different output of xor is(A)	A
	1	
	0	
	x	
	10	
67	Convenient way is to convert NAND logic diagram to its	C
	AND diagram	
	OR diagram	
	AND-OR diagram	
	NOR diagram	
68	Result of two bit subtract or is called	A
	difference bit	

	least significant bit	
	most significant bit	
	carry bit	
69	If two systems have different codes then circuit inserted between them is	D
	combinational circuit	
	sequential circuit	
	combinational sequence circuit	
	conversion circuit	
70	In design procedure input output values are assigned with	B
	numeric values	
	letter symbols	
	0's	
	1's	
71	. In analysis procedure information processing task is correlated with	D
	BCD code	
	excess3 code	
	map	
	truth table	
72	NAND logic conversion is facilitated using symbols of	D
	invert OR	
	AND invert	
	NAND invert	
	both a and b	
73	Multiple variable xor is defined as	D
	inverted or function	
	prime function	
	even function	
	odd function	
74	ASM chart has	D
	4 entrances	
	3 entrances	
	2 entrances	
	1 entrances	
75	ASM chart has	D
	4 entrances	
	3 entrances	
	2 entrances	
	1 entrances	
76	Conditional box is of shape of	C
	square	
	rectangle	
	oval	
	pentagon	
77	Signal that starts operation is indicated by	D
	INITIAL	
	GO	
	BEGIN	
	START	
78	One that is not a type of register	D

	storage	
	shift register	
	counter	
	latch	
79	Element of state chart diagrams which uses round corner boxes to represent situations of an object is classified as	D
	life line marker	
	iteration marker	
	transitions	
	state	
80	Relationship between two independent data tables is classified as	D
	structural relationships	
	non-structural relationships	
	identifying relationships	
	non-identifying relationships	
81	In state chart diagrams, element which is shown with help of double line filled circle with pointing arrow is classified as	C
	two degree state	
	initial state	
	final state	
	zero degree state	
82	In state chart diagrams, element which is shown with help of solid circle with outgoing arrow is classified as	B
	two degree state	
	initial state	
	final state	
	zero degree state	
83	Elements included in state chart diagrams are	A
	transitions	
	condition markers	
	iteration markers	
	lifeline markers	
84	Reduction of flip-flops in a sequential circuit is referred to as	B
	reduction	
	state reduction	
	next state	
	both a and b	
85	Latches are	A
	level triggered	
	edge triggered	
	clock triggered	
	pulse triggered	
86	M flip-flops produces	D
	2^m-1 states	
	2-1 states	
	2^m+1 states	
	2^m states	
87	Two states are said to be equal if they have exactly same	C
	inputs	

	next state	
	output	
	both a and b	
88	Implication table consists of	A
	squares	
	triangles	
	cubes	
	circles	
89	In excitation table of D flip-flop next state is equal to	D
	present state	
	next state	
	input state	
	D state	
90	Don’t care condition in a table is represented by	D
	a	
	b	
	c	
	x	
91	In T flip-flop when state of T flip-flop has to be complemented T must be	B
	0	
	1	
	t	
	t+1	
92	Table that lists inputs for required change of states is called	B
	truth table	
	excitation table	
	state table	
	clock table	
93	Which combinational circuit is renowned for selecting a single input from multiple inputs & directing the binary information to output line?	D
	Data Selector	
	Data Distributer	
	Both a & b	
	None of the above	
94	It is possible for an enable or strobe input to undergo an expansion of two or more mux ICs to the digital multiplexer with the proficiency of large number of _____.	A
	. inputs	
	output	
	selection lines	
	all of the above	
95	Which is the major functioning responsibility of the multiplexing combinational circuit?	C
	Decoding the binary information	
	Generation of all minterms in an output function with OR-gate	
	Generation of selected path between multiple sources and a single destination	
	All of the above	
96	What is the normal operating condition of decoder corresponding to input & output states?	A
	E= 0 & Outputs at '0' logic state	
	E = 1 & Outputs at '1' logic state	
	. E= 0 & Outputs at '1' logic state	

	E= 1 & Outputs at '0' logic state	
97	Which sequential circuits generate the feedback path due to the cross-coupled connection from output of one gate to the input of another gate?	B
	Synchronous	
	Asynchronous	
	Both(A&B)	
	None of the above	
98	What is/are the crucial function/s of memory elements used in the sequential circuits?	C
	Storage of binary information	
	Specify the state of sequential	
	Both a & b	
	None of the above	
99	How are the sequential circuits specified in terms of time sequence?	D
	By Inputs	
	By Outputs	
	By Internal states	
	All of the above	
100	The behavior of synchronous sequential circuit can be predicted by defining the signals at	A
	discrete instants of time	
	continuous instants of time	
	sampling instants of time	
	at any instant of time	
101	. Which memory elements are utilized in an asynchronous & clocked sequential circuits respectively?	B
	Time- delay devices & registers	
	Time- delay devices & flip-flops	
	Time- delay devices & counters	
	Time-delay devices & latches	
102	Why do the D-flip-flops receives its designation or nomenclature as 'Data Flip-flops' ?	C
	Due to its capability to receive data from flip-flop	
	Due to its capability to store data in flip-flop	
	Due to its capability to transfer the data into flip-flop	
	All of the above	
103	The characteristic equation of D-flip-flop implies that ____	D
	the next state is dependent on previous state	
	the next state is dependent on present state	
	the next state is dependent on present state	
	the next state is independent of present state	
104	Which circuit is generated from D-flip-flop due to addition of an inverter by causing reduction in the number of inputs?	D
	Gated JK- latch	
	Gated SR- latch	
	Gated T- latch	
	Gated D- latch	
105	What is the bit storage binary information capacity of any flip-flop?	A
	1 bit	
	2 bits	
	16 bits	
	infinite bits	

106	Which time interval specify the shifting of overall contents of the shift registers?	C
	. Bit time	
	Shift time	
	Word time	
	Code time	
107	What does the group of bits possessing certain level of significance called as?	D
	code	
	bite	
	word	
	all of the above	
108	Which gate configuration permits the application of different independent sources at a given single node?	C
	OR gate	
	Non-linear mixing gate	
	Both a & b	
	None of the above	
109	An OR-gate configuration has an ability to reduce the interaction of the sources on one another & precisely renowned as _____	A
	Buffer circuit	
	Non-linear mixing circuit	
	coincidence circuit	
	All of the above	
110	Being a universal gate, it is possible for NOR gate to get converted into AND gate by inverting the inputs _____	A
	before getting applied to NOR gate	
	after getting applied to NOR gate	
	before getting applied to AND gate	
	before getting applied to AND gate	
111	NAND & NOR are considered to be Universal gates because they are capable of performing the logical functionalities concerned to _____.	D
	AND gate	
	OR gate	
	NOT gate	
	All of the above	
112	Which among the below stated Boolean expressions do not obey De-Morgan's theorem ?	C
	X+Y = X.Y	
	X.Y = X + Y	
	X.Y = X+Y	
	None of the above	
113	Which law of Boolean algebra emphasizes the elimination of brackets from logical expression along with the re-arrangement of grouping variables ?	C
	Distributive Law	
	Commutative Law	
	Associative Law	
	None of the above	
114	According to property of Commutative law, the order of combining terms does not affect ___.	B
	initial result of combination	
	final result of combination	
	mid-term result of combination	

	none of the above	
115	Which are the fundamental inputs assigned or configured in the full adder circuit ?	C
	Addend, Augend & Sum	
	Augend, Sum & Input Carry	
	Addend, Augend & Input Carry	
	Addend, Sum & Input Carry	
116	Which gate must be interposed between the cascaded stages of a parallel binary adder comprising full adders for transmission purpose of carry C_{11} or C_{22} to the next stage?	A
	OR gate	
	AND gate	
	EX-OR gate	
	NAND gate	
117	How does an arithmetic operation take place in binary adders?	C
	By addition of two bits corresponding to 2^n digit	
	By addition of resultant to carry from 2^{n-1} digit	
	both a & b	
	none of the above	
118	What are the possible combinations of maxterms comprising 'n' variables with an accomplishment of an OR gate generation?	C
	2^{n-1}	
	2^{n+1}	
	2^n	
	2^{n+2}	
119	The boolean functions which can be represented by the sum of minterms and product of maxterms can be categorized in _____.	B
	standard form	
	canonical form	
	both a & b	
	none of the above	
120	Which operation is denoted by the sum-of-product form of boolean expression consisting of AND terms ?	B
	ANDing	
	ORing	
	both	
	none of the above	
121	What are the OR terms present in product of sum form of the boolean expression called as ?	C
	minterms	
	maxterms	
	sum terms	
	product terms	
122	Two cross coupled NAND gates make	A
	SR Latch	
	RS flip-flop	
	D flip-flop	
	master slave flip-flop	
123	Input clock of RS flip-flop is given to	B
	input	
	pulser	
	output	

	master slave flip-flop	
124	D flip-flop is a circuit having	C
	2NAND gates	
	3NAND gates	
	4NAND gates	
	5NAND gates	
125	SR latch is made by two cross coupled	C
	AND gates	
	OR gates	
	NAND gates	
	NOR gates	

MODULE WISE ASSIGNMENT QUESTIONS

Module – I

1. Perform (24)10 – (56)10 in BCD using 9's complement
2. Convert (97.75)10 to base 2.
3. Convert(2468)10 to ( )16
4. Convert the decimal number 250.5 to base 3, base 4

Module – I I

1. State De Morgans's theorems.
2. What are the advantages of tabulation method over K-map?
3. Prove that xy+x'z+xy'=xy+x'y

Module – III

1. Design half adder from 2 to 4 decoder
2. List the applications of Multiplexers.
3. Implement two input EX-OR gate from 2 to 1 multiplexer
4. Realize full adder using two half adders and logic gates
5. Design 2x4 decoder using NAND gates.
6. Draw the basic architecture of a PAL?
7. Design a 4x2 PROM with AND-OR gates.
8. Give the comparison between PROM, PLA and PAL.

Module – IV

1. What are applications of Flip-Flop?
2. What is race around condition? How can minimized in J-K flip-flop

3. Give the comparison between synchronous sequential and asynchronous sequential circuits

Module – V

1. Write capabilities and limitations of Finite- State machine.
2. Distinguish between Moore and Mealy Machines.
3. Draw and explain Moore circuit.

Module – I

1. Define and explain basic Number System and different types of Number Systems with example
2. Describe Hamming Code and device a single error correcting codes for a 11-bit group 01101110101
3. Illustrate the procedure to convert from one Number System to another Number System.
4. Apply the r's complement and (r-1)'s complement of the give binary numbers 1011010 and 011011. Also find the 2's complement addition of the same
5. Differentiate between Binary to Gray and Gray to Binary conversions with examples

Module– II

1. Solve the following functions by using Boolean algebra theorems and rules

    a) F= A[B+C($\overline{A}$B+A$\overline{C}$)]
    b) F=AB+A$\overline{C}$+AB$\overline{C}$($\overline{AB}$+C)
    c) Σm=(1,3,5,7)
2. Implement the following functions using NAND gates.

    a) F1= A (B+C D) + (B C)_
    b) F2=w x_+x_y (z + w_)
3. Create XOR and XNOR gates functionality by using
   a)NAND gate b) NOR gate
4. Simplify the following Boolean expressions using K-map and implement it by using NOR gates.

    a) F(A,B,C,D)=AB'C' +AC+A'CD'
    b) F(W,X,Y,Z)=w' x'y'z' + wxy'z' + w'x'yz + wxyz
5. Simplify the following using tabulation methody(w,x,y,z)=∑m(1,2,3,5,9,12,14,15) +d(4,8,11)
6. Minimize the following function using K-map and also verify through tabulation method.

F (A, B, C, D) = ∑m (1,4,5,7,8,9,12,14)+d (0, 3, 6, 10)

7. Minimize the following expressions using K-Map
    a) F=Σm(0,2,3,4,5,6)
    b) F=πM(0,1,2,3,4,7)
    c) F=X+$\overline{YZ}$
8. Apply K-Map on the following function and reduce it F=Σm(0,1,2,3,5,7,8,9,10,12,13) in SOP and POS forms

9. a) Reduce the following function using k-map technique F(A,B,C,D)=π(0,2,3,8,9,12,13,15)
   b) Minimize the expression using k-map Y=(A+B+C') (A+ B+ C) (A' + B ' C ') (A'+ B +C) (A+B+C)

Module– III

1. a)Define decoder. Construct 3x8 decoder using logic gates and truth table.
   b)Define an encoder. Design octal to binary encoder.

2. Design a 4-bit BCD to XS-3 Code Converter.

a)Derive the PLA programming table for the combinational circuit that squares a 3 bitnumber.

b) Implement the following Boolean functions using PAL.

W (A, B, C, D) =∑m(0,2,6,7,8,912,13)
X (A, B, C, D) =∑m(0,2,6,7,8,12,13,14)
Y (A, B, C, D) =∑m(2,3,8,9,10,12,13)
Z (A, B, C, D) = ∑m (1,3,4,6,9,12,14)

3. a)Design BCD to gray code converter and realize using logic gates.

b) Design a 1:8 demultiplexer using two 1:4 demultiplexer. **(**8M+8M**)**

4. a) Implement the following Boolean functions using PLA.

A(x,y,z)= ∑m(1,2,4,6)
B(x,y,z)= ∑m(0,1,6,7)
C(x,y,z)= ∑m(2,6)

b) Design a combinational circuit using PROM that accepts 3-bit binary number and generates its equivalent excess-3 code.

MODULE– IV

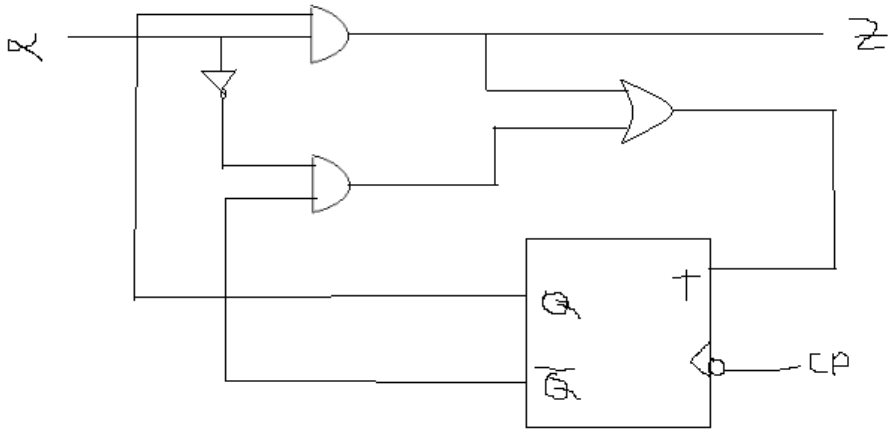
1. Describe the Timing and Triggering Considerations of sequential Circuits with example waveforms.
2. Illustrate the operation of different types of Flop-flops with their circuits and truth tables.
3. Explain about Race Around Condition and how it is eleminated
4. Produce the Excitation Tables of different Flop-flops from the Truth Tables and also explain them.
5. Convert the following
   a) JK FF to SR FF
   b) D FF to JK FF
   c) SR FF to T FF
6. Draw the logic diagram for 4-stage Asynchronous Counter with positive edge triggering Flip-flops. Also draw the timing diagram.
7. Design MOD-6 Ripple Counter and Synchronous Counter using JK FF
8. 6. a) Design a mod-10 Ripple counter using T flip flops and explain its operation.
9. b) What are the different types of registers? Explain the Serial Input Parallel Output shiftregister.
10. Distinguish between different types of Shift Registers. Also design Ring Counter using Shift Registers

MODULE– V

1. Define State Diagram, State Table, Transition Table, Output Table and state Assignment with examples.
2. Distinguish between Mealy and Moore Machines. Also explain the different rules to convert from Mealy to Moore as well as Moore to Mealy Machines. Convery the following Mealy Machine to Moore

PS	NS,Z	
	X=0	X=1
A	C,0	B,0
B	A,1	D,0
C	B,1	A,1
D	D,1	C,0

3. Construct the Transition Table, State Table and State Diagram for the following Moore sequential circuit



4.Define State Equivalence Theorem. Also define the terms Successor, Terminal State, Distinguishable State and Distinguishable Sequence with examples.

5.Minimize this Completely Specified machine using Partition Technique

. PS	NS,Z	
	X=0	X=1
A	E,0	D,1
B	F,0	D,0
C	E,0	B,1
D	F,0	B,0
E	C,0	F,1
F	B,0	C,0

6.Draw the Merger Graph and obtain the Maximum Compatibilities for this incompletely Specified Sequential Machine

. PS	NS,Z			
	I_1	I_2	I_3	I_4
A	-	C,1	E,1	B,1
B	E,0	-	-	-
C	F,0	F,1	-	-
D	-	-	B,1	-
E	-	F,0	A,0	D,1
F	C,0	-	B,0	C,1

7.a) Draw the diagram of Mealy type FSM for serial adder.

b) Draw the circuit for Moore type FSM.

8.Draw a state diagrams of a sequence detector which can detect 010

MALLA REDDY ENGINEERING COLLEGE

(AUTONOMOUS)

B. Tech II Year I Semester Examinations-Electronics and Communication Engineering

DIGITAL ELECTRONICS

MODEL QUESTION PAPER

Time: 3 Hours **Max. Marks: 70**

Part B

1. a) Convert $(A0F9.0EBA98.0DC)_{16}$ to decimal, binary, octal. (7M)
   b) Perform the following addition using excess-3 code i)386+756 ii)1010 + 444 (4M)
   c) Perform (24)10 – (56)10 in BCD using 9's complement (3M)

OR

2. (a)Given the 8bit data word 01011011, generate the 12 bit composite word for the hamming code that corrects and detects single errors (10M)
   b.Convert the given Gray code number to equivalent binary 001001011110010.(4M)

3. a)Simplify the following Boolean expressions using the Boolean theorems.
   (A+B+C) (B'+C)′(A′+C)
   (A+B) (A+B′) + (A'+B)
   b)Why a NAND and NOR gates are known as universal gates? Simulate all the basic Gates.

OR

4. a) Minimize the following expressions using K-map and realize using NAND Gates.
f = ∑m (1, 3, 5, 8, 9, 11, 15) +d (2, 13). (7M)
b) Simplify the following boolean function using Tabular method.
   F(A,B,C,D)=∑m(0,1,2,5,7,8,9,10,13,15) (7M)

5. a)Design a excess-3 adder using 4-bit parallel binary adder and logic gates. (10M)
b)What are the applications of full adders? (4M)

OR

6. a) Design and implement Full adder with PLA (7M)
b) Write the comparisons between PAL, PLA (7M)

7. a) Construct a JK flip flop using a D flip flop, a 2x1 multiplexer and an inverter. (7M)
b)Draw the schematic circuit of RS master slave flip flop. Give its truth table and justify the entries in the truth table. (7M)

OR

8. a) Design a MOD-10 ripple counter. (6M)
b) Design and construct MOD-5 synchronous counter using JK flip flops. (8M)

9.a)Draw the diagram of Mealy type FSM for serial adder. (7M)
b)Draw the circuit for Moore type FSM. (7M)

OR

10. a) What are the capabilities and limitations of finite state machines? Discuss. (7M)
b) Explain the procedure for state minimization using merger graph and merger table.(7M)

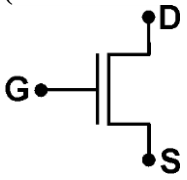
CONTENT BEYOND SYLLABUS

CMOS Logic Gates :

Logic gates are implemented via transistors. One popular technology for implementing transistors is **Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor (CMOS)** technology. Transistors effectively implement switches. There are two types of **Metal Oxide Semiconductor Field Effect Transistors (MOSFETs)**, namely the n-channel (NMOS) and p-channel (PMOS) transistor.
CMOS uses both NMOS and CMOS transistors to implement logic gates in a complementary way.

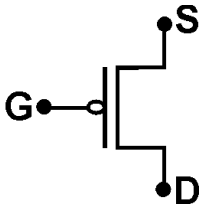
Voltages and logic levels :
Logic levels are represented with voltages. The logic level "0" is represented by the lowest voltage (GND) The logic level "1" is represented by the highest voltage (VDD)Transistors are used as switches to "open" or "close" and connect wires to either VDD or GND.
NMOS transistor

NMOS transistor :
Simplified NMOS transistor has 3 terminals: 1) the Gate (G); 2) the Source (S) and 3) the Drain (D). The source is at a lower voltage,The drain is at a higher voltage ,When a high voltage is applied to G (w.r.t. to S) and VGS is above some threshold voltage VT the "switch" closes and D is connected to S (current flows from D to S). **This "pulls down" the voltage at D to the voltage at S.** When the voltage between G and S is less than some threshold voltage VT the "switch" opens and D is disconnected from S (no current flows from D to S).



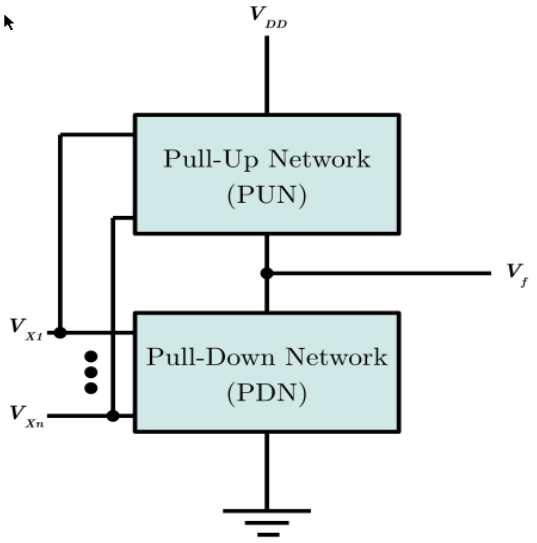
PMOS transistor :

Simplified PMOS transistor has 3 terminals: 1) the Gate (G); 2) the Source (S) and 3) the Drain (D). The source is at a higher voltage; ,The drain is at a lower voltage. ,When a low voltage is applied to G (w.r.t. to S) and VSG is above some threshold voltage VT the "switch" closes and S is connected to D (current flows from S to D). **This "pulls up" the voltage at D to the voltage at S.**
When the voltage between S and G is less than some threshold voltage VT the "switch" opens and S is disconnected from D (no current flows from S to D).



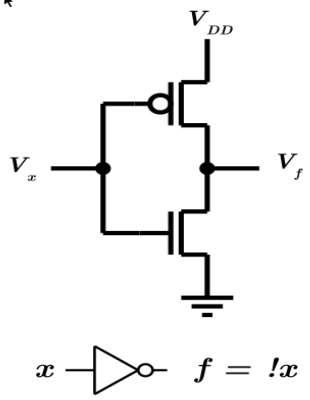
CMOS structure :

CMOS combines NMOS and PMOS transistors in a structure which consists of a Pull-Up Network (PUN) and a Pull-Down Network (PDN) to implement logic functions.
- PUN and PDN are duals of each other.
- A current path (connection) from VDD to VF means VF is high (f is logic 1)
- A current path (connection) from VF to GND means VF is low (f is logic 0).
- "AND" corresponds to transistors in series…
- "OR" corresponds to transistors in parallel…

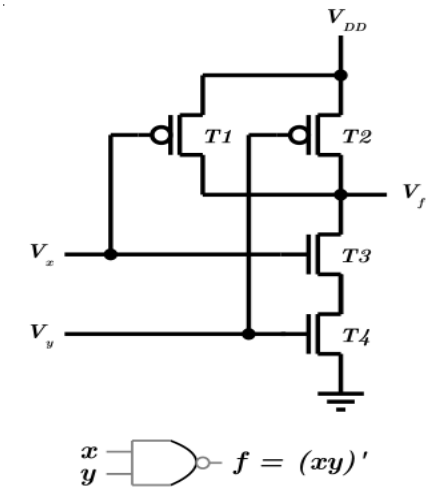


CMOS inverter :

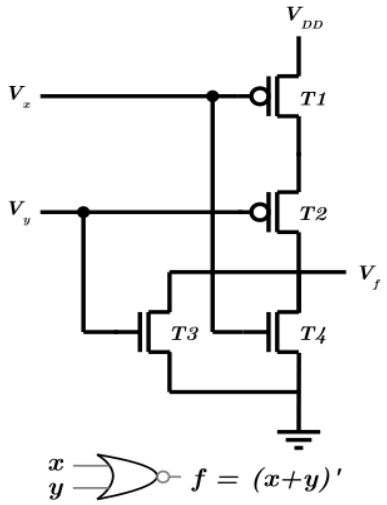
a) When VX is high (logic 1): 1) NMOS is closed; 2) PMOS is open;3) current flows from VF to GND then VF is GND (logic 0).
b)When VX is low (logic 0): 1) NMOS is open; 2) PMOS is closed;3) current flows from VDD to VF then VF is VDD (logic 1).



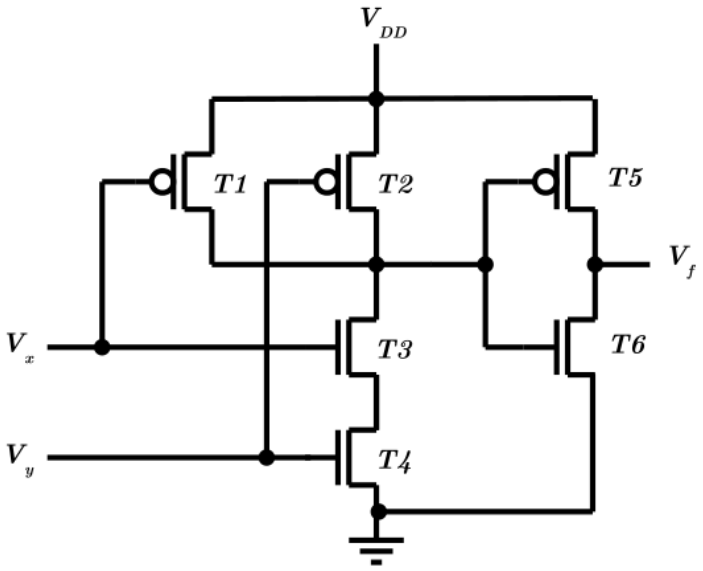
CMOS NAND :



CMOS NOR :



CMOS AND :



LECTURE NOTES

ON

II B. Tech I semester (MR 18)

G Prasanna Kumar
Assistant Professor

ELECTRONICS AND COMMUNICATION ENGINEERING

MODULE I

Number systems& Binary codes The Decimal Number system:

The Decimal number system contains ten unique symbols. 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9. Since Counting in decimal involves ten symbols its base or radix is ten. There is no symbol for its base. i.e, for ten .It is a positional weighted system i.e,the value attached to a symbol depends on its location w.r.t. the decimal point.In this system, any no.(integer, fraction or mixed) of any magnitude can be rep. by the use of these ten symbols only. Each symbol in the no. is called a Digit. The leftmost digit in any no.rep ,which has the greatest positional weight out of all the digits present in that no. is called the MSD (Most Significant Digit) and the right most digit which has the least positional weight out of all the digits present in that no. is called the LSD(Least Significant Digit).The digits on the left side of the decimal pt. form the integer part of a decimal no. & those on the right side form the fractional part.The digits to the right of the decimal pt have weights which are negative powers of 10 and the digits to the left of the decimal pt have weights are positive powers of 10. The value of a decimal no.is the sum of the products of the digit of that no. with their respective column weights. The weights of each column is 10 times greater than the weight of unity or 10^{10}.The first digit to the right of the decimal pt. has a weight of 1/10 or 10^{-1}.for the second 1/100 & for third 1/1000.In general the value of any mixed decimal no. is

$d_n\, d_{n-1}\, d_{n-2}$ ……$d_1\, d_0.d_{-1}\, d_{-2}\, d_{-3}$ …….d_{-k} is given by

$(d_n \times 10_n)+(d_{n-1} \times 10_{n-1})+$ ……$(d_1 \times 10_1)+(d_0 \times 10^1)+(d_{-1} \times 10^2)(d_{-2} \times 10^3)$ …….

9's & 10's Complements:

It is the Subtraction of decimal no.s can be accomplished by the 9's & 10's compliment methods similar to the 1's & 2's compliment methods of binary . the 9's compliment of a decimal no. is obtained by subtracting each digit of that decimal no. from 9. The 10's compliment of a decimal no is obtained by adding a 1 to its 9's compliment.

Example: 9's compliment of 3465 and 782.54 is

9999	999.99
-3465	-782.54
6534	217.45

10‘s complement of 4069 is

```
  9999
- 4069
-------
  5930
    +1
-------
 5931
-------
```

9’s compliment method of subtraction:

To perform this, obtain the 9‘s compliment of the subtrahend and it to the minuend now call this no. the intermediate result .if there is a carry to the LSD of this result to get the answer called **end around carry**.If there is no carry , it indicates that the answer is negative & the intermediate result is its 9‘s compliment.

Example: Subtract using 9‘s comp

(1)745.81-436.62

```
745.81
-436.62
---------
309.19
```

(2)436.62-745.82

```
436.62
-745.81
---------
-309.19
```

```
745.81                                          436.62
+563.37    9‘s compliment of 436.62            +254.18
-------                                        --------
1309.18    Intermediate result                  690.80
     +1    end around carry
-------
 309.19
---------
```

If there is ono carry indicating that answer is negative . so take 9‘s complement of intermesiate result & put minus sign (-) result should ne -309.19
If carry indicates that the answer is positive +309.19

10’s compliment method of subtraction:

To perform this, obtain the 10‘s compliment of the subtrahend& add it to the minuend. If there is a carry ignore it. The presence of the carry indicates that the answer is positive, the result is the answer. If there is no carry, it indicates that the answer is negative & the result is its 10‘s compliment. Obtain the 10‘s compliment of the result & place negative sign infront to get the answer.

Example: (a)2928.54-41673 (b)416.73-2928.54

2928.54		0416.73
-0416.73		-2928.54
----------		----------
2511.81		-2511.81
----------		---------
2928.54		0416.73
+9583.27	10‘s compliment of 436.62	+7071.46
-------		--------
12511.81	ignore the carry	7488.19

The Binary Number System:

It is a positional weighted system. The base or radix of this no. system is 2 Hence it has two independent symbols. The basic itself can‘t be a symbol. The symbol used are 0 and 1.The binary digit is called a bit. A binary no. consist of a sequence of bits each of which is either a 0 or 1. The binary point seperates the integer and fraction parts. Each digit (bit) carries a weight based on its position relative to the binary point. The weight of each bit position is on power of 2 greater than the weight of the position to its immediate right. The first bit to the left of the binary point has a weight of 2^0 & that column is called the **Units Column**.The second bit to the left has a weight of 2^1 & it is in the 2‘s column & the third has weight of 2^2& so on.The first bit to the right of the binary point has a weight of 2^{-1} & it is said to be in the ½ _s column , next right bit with a weight of 2^{-2} is in ¼‘s column so on..The decimal value of the binary no. is the sum of the products of all its bits multiplied by the weight of their respective positions. In general , binary no. wioth an integer part of (n+1) bits & a fraction parts of k bits can be

$d_n\, d_{n-1}\, d_{n-2}$ …….$d_1\, d_0.d_{-1}\, d_{-2}\, d_{-3}$ …….d_{-k}

In decimal equivalent is

$(d_n \times 2^n)+(d_{n-1} \times 2^{n-1})+$ …….$(d_1 \times 2^1)+(d_0 \times 2^0)+(d_{-1} \times 2^{-1})(d_{-2} \times 2^{-2})$ …….

The decimal equivalent of the no. system

$d_n\, d_{n-1}\, d_{n-2}$ …….$d_1\, d_0.d_{-1}\, d_{-2}\, d_{-3}$ …….d_{-k} in any system with base b is

$(d_n \times b^n)+(d_{n-1} \times b^{n-1})+$ …….$(d_1 \times b^1)+(d_0 \times b^0)+(d_{-1} \times b^{-1})(d_{-2} \times b^{-2})$ …….

The binary no. system is used in digital computers because the switching circuits used in these computers use two-state devices such as transistors , diodes etc. A transistor can be OFF or ON a switch can be OPEN or CLOSED , a diode can be OFF or ON etc(twopossible states). These two states represented by the symbols 0 & 1 respectively.

Counting in binary:

Easy way to remember to write a binary sequence of n bits is

- The rightmost column in the binary number begins with a 0 & alternates between 0 & 1.
- Second column begins with 2(=2^1) zeros & alternates between the groups of 2 zeros & 2 ones. So on

Decmal no.	Binary no.	Decimal no.	Binary no.
0	0	20	10100
1	1	21	10101
2	10	22	10110
3	11	23	10111
4	100	24	11000
5	101	25	11001
6	110	26	11010
7	111	27	11010
8	1000		
9	1001		
10	1010		
11	1011		
12	1100		
13	1101		
14	1110		
15	1111		
16	10000		
17	10001		
18	10010		
19	10011	39	100111

Binary to Decimal Conversion:

It is by the positional weights method . In this method,each binary digit of the no. is multiplied by its position weight . The product terms are added to obtain the decimal no.

Example: convert **10101**$_2$ to decimal

Positional weights 2^4 2^3 2^2 2^1 2^0

Binary no. **10101**$_2$ =(1x 2^4)+(0x2^3)+(1x2^2)+(0x2^1)+(1x2^0)

=16+0+4+0+1

= 21_{10}

Example: convert **11011.101**$_2$ to decimal

Positional weights 2^4 2^3 2^2 2^1 2^0 2^{-1} 2^{-2} 2^{-3}

=16+8+0+2+1+.5+0+.125

= 27.625_{10}

- An integer binary no. can also converted toa an integer decimal no as follows

* Left bit MSB , multipliy this bit by 2 & add the provided to next bit to the right
* Multiply the result obtained in the previous step by 2 & add the product to the next bit to the right.

Exaple: 1001011_2

1	0	0	1	0	1	1
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
64*1	32*0	16*0	8*1	4*0	2*1	1*1
64			8		2	1
	Result=75_{10}					

Decimal to Binary conversion:

Two methods

There are reverse processes of the two methods used to convert a binary no. to a decimal no.

I **method**: is for small no.s The values of various powers of 2 need to be remembered. . for conversion of larger no.s have a table of powers of 2 known as the sum of weights method. The set of binary weight values whose sum is equal to the decimal no. is determined.

- To convert a given decimal integer no. to binary,
  (1). Obtain largest decimal no. which is power of 2 not exceeding the remainder & record it
  (2). Subtract this no. from the given no & obtain the remainder
  (3). Once again obtain largest decimal no. which is power of 2 not exceeding this remainder & record it.
  (4). Subtract through no. from the remainder to obtain the next remainder.
  (5). Repeat till you get a ‖0‖ remainder

The sumof these powers of 2 expressed in binary is the binary equivalent of the original decimal no. similarly to convert fractions to binary.

II method: It converts decimal integer no. to binary integer no by successive division by 2 & the decimal fraction is converted to binary fraction by **double –dabble method**

Example: 163.875^{10} binary

Given decimal no. is mixed no.
So convert its integer & fraction parts separately.
Integer part is 163_{10}
The largest no. which is a power of 2, not exceeding 163 is 128.
$128=2^7=10000000_2$
remainder is 163-128=35
The largest no., apower of 2 , not exceeding 35 is 32.

$32=2^5=100000_2$.
remainder is 35-32=3
The largest no., apower of 2 , not exceeding 35is 2.
$2=2^1=10_2$
Remainder is
3-2=1
$1=2^0=1_2$

$163_{10}= 10000000_2+100000_2+10_2+1_2= 10100011_2$.

The fraction part is 0.875_{10}

1.The largest fraction,which is a power of 2 , not exceeding 0.875 is is 0.5

$0.5=2^{-1}=0.100_2$

Remainder is 0.875-.5=0.3752.

2. 0.375 is 0.25

$0.25 =2^{-2}=0.01_2$

Remainder is 0.375-.25=0.125.

3. 0.125 is 0.125 itself

$0.125 =2^{-3} =0.001_2$

$0.875_{10}=0.100_2+0.01_2+0.001_2=0.111_2$

final result is

$163.875_{10} =10100011.111_2$.

Example: convert52_{10} tobinary using double-dabble method

Divide the given decimal no successively by 2 &read the remainders upwards to get the equivalent binary no.

Successive division		remainder	
2 | **52**			
2 | **26**	**---**	**0**	
2 | **13**	**---**	**0**	
2 | **6**	**---**	**1**	
2 | **3**	**---**	**0**	↓
2 | **1**	**---**	**1**	↓ **= 110100_2**
2 | **0**	**---**	**1**	↓

Example:0.75_{10} using double – dabble method by 2 Multiply give fraction by 2
Keep the integer in the product as it is & multiply the new fraction in the product

	0.75		
Multiply 0.75 by 2	1.50	↓	
Multiply 0.50 by 2	1.00	↓	$=0.11_2$

Binary Addition:

Rules:

0+0=0
0+1=1
1+0=1
1+1=10 i.e, 0 with a carry of 1.

Example: add binary no.s 1101.101 & 111.011

8421 2^{-1} 2^{-2} 2^{-3}
1101.101
111.011
10101.000

In 2^{-3} column 1+1=0 with a carry of 1 to the 2^{-2} column
In 2^{-2} column 0+1+1=0 2^{-1}

1	1+0+1=0	1‘s
2	1+1+1=1	2‘s
4	0+1+1=0	4‘s
8	1+1+1=1	8‘s
16	1+1 =0	16‘s

Binary Subtraction:

Rules: 0-0=0
1-1=0
1-0=1
0-1=1 with a borrow of 1

Example: subtract binary no.s 111.1_2& 1010.01_2

8421 2^{-1} 2^{-2} 2^{-3}
1010.010
111.111
0010.011

In 2^{-3} column 10-1=1

2^{-2} 10-1=1
2^{-1} 1-1=0
1‘s 1-1=0
2‘s 10-1=1
4‘s 1-1=0
8‘s 0-0=0 result is 0010.011_2

Binary multiplication:

Two methods:

1. paper method
2. computer method

Rules:

0x0=0
1x1=0
1x0=0
0x1=0

Paper method:

1101_2 by 110_2

```
1101
X110
----
0000
1101
1101
-------
1001110
```

1011.101_2 by 101.01_2

```
1011.101
x101.01
--------
1011101
0000000
1011101
0000000
1011101
--------
111101.00001
```

Computer method:

1100_2 by 1001_2

MQ reg	10010000	A1 shifted out so add
Shifted MQ left	100100000	M to MQ
Add M	1100	

Partial sum in MQ	00101100	A 0shifted out so add
Shift MQ left	001011000	0 to MQ
Add 0	0000	

Partial sum in MQ 01011000 A 0shifted out so add
Shift MQ left 010110000 0 to MQ
Add 0 0000

Partial sum in MQ 101100000 A1 shifted out so add
Shift MQ left 101100000 M to MQ
Add M 1100

Final sum in MQ 01101100

Binary Division:

Two methods:
1. paper method
2. computer method

Example : 101101_2 by 110

```
110 )  101101  ( 111.1
         110
        ---
        1010
         110
        ---
        1001
         110
-------
          110
          110
        ---
        000
```

Ans: 111.1

Representation of signed no.s binary arithmetic in computers:

- Two ways of rep signed no.s
    1. Sign Magnitude form
    2. Complemented form
- Two complimented forms
    1. 1‘s compliment form
    2. 2‘s compliment form

Advantage of performing subtraction by the compliment method is reduction in the hardware.(instead of addition & subtraction only adding ckt‘s are needed.)
i.e, subtraction is also performed by adders only.

Istead of subtracting one no. from other the compliment of the subtrahend is added to minuend. In sign magnitude form, an additional bit called the sign bit is placed in front of the no. If the sign bit is 0, the no. is +ve, If it is a 1, the no is _ve.

Ex:

0	1	0	1	0	0	1

↓

Sign bit =+41 magnitude

↑

1	1	0	1	0	0	1

= -41

Note: manipulation is necessary to add a +ve no to a –ve no

Representation of signed no.s using 2's or 1's complement method:

If the no. is +ve, the magnitude is rep in its true binary form & a sign bit 0 is placed in front of the MSB.I f the no is _ve , the magnitude is rep in its 2's or 1's compliment form &a sign bit 1 is placed in front of the MSB.

The rep of +51 & -51 is

Sign bit magnitude

↓

0	1	1	0	0	1	1

In sign magnitude form
In sign 2's compliment form
In sign 1's compliment form

=+51

1	1	1	0	0	1	1

In sign magnitude form

=-51

1	0	0	1	1	0	1

In sign 2's compliment form

=-51

1	0	0	1	1	0	0

In sign 1's compliment form

=-51

Ex:

Given no.	Sign mag form	2's comp form	1's comp form
01101	+13	+13	+13
010111	+23	+23	+23
10111	-7	-7	-8
1101010	-42	-22	-21

Special case in 2's comp representation:

Whenever a signed no. has a 1 in the sign bit & all 0‘s for the magnitude bits, the decimal equivalent is -2^n , where n is the no of bits in the magnitude .
Ex: 1000= -8 & 10000=-16

Characteristics of 2’s compliment no.s:

Properties:

1. There is one unique zero
2. 2‘s comp of 0 is 0
3. The leftmost bit can‘t be used to express a quantity . it is a 0 no. is +ve.
4. For an n-bit word which includes the sign bit there are $(2^{n-1}-1)$ +ve integers, 2^{n-1} –ve integers & one 0 , for a total of 2^n uniquestates.
5. Significant information is containd in the 1‘s of the +ve no.s & 0‘s of the _ve no.s
6. A _ve no. may be converted into a +ve no. by finding its 2‘s comp.

Signed binary numbers:

Decimal	Sign 2‘s comp form	Sign 1‘s comp form	Sign mag form
+7	0111	0111	0111
+6	0110	0110	0110
+5	0101	0101	0101
+4	0100	0100	0100
+3	0011	0011	0011
+2	0010	0010	0010
+1	0011	0011	0011
+0	0000	0000	0000

-0	--	1111	1000
-1	1111	1110	1001
-2	1110	1101	1010
-3	1101	1100	1011
-4	1100	1011	1100
-5	1011	1010	1101
-6	1010	1001	1110
-7	1001	1000	1111
8	1000	--	--

Methods of obtaining 2’s comp of a no:

- In 3 ways
  1. By obtaining the 1‘s comp of the given no. (by changing all 0‘s to 1‘s & 1‘s to 0‘s) & then adding 1.
  2. By subtracting the given n bit no N from 2^n
  3. Starting at the LSB , copying down each bit upto & including the first 1 bit encountered , and complimenting the remaining bits.

  Ex: Express -45 in 8 bit 2‘s comp form

+45 in 8 bit form is 00101101

I method:

1‘s comp of 00101101 & the add 1

00101101
11010010
+1

11010011 is 2‘s comp form

II method:

Subtract the given no. N from 2^n

2^n = 100000000

Subtract 45= -00101101
+1

11010011 is 2‘s comp

III method:

Original no: 00101101

Copy up to First 1 bit 1

Compliment remaining 1101001

bits 11010011

Ex:

-73.75 in 12 bit 2‘s comp form

I method

01001001.1100
10110110.0011
+1

10110110.0100 is 2‘s

II method:

2^8 = 100000000.0000

Sub 73.75=-01001001.1100

10110110.0100 is 2‘s comp

III method :

Orginalno : 01001001.1100
Copy up to 1‘st bit : 100
Comp the remaining bits: 10110110.0

10110110.0100

2’s compliment Arithmetic:

- The 2‘s comp system is used to rep –ve no.s using modulus arithmetic . The word length of a computer is fixed. i.e, if a 4 bit no. is added to another 4 bit no . the result will be only of 4 bits. Carry if any , from the fourth bit will overflow called the Modulus arithmetic. Ex:1100+1111=1011
- In the 2‘s compl subtraction, add the 2‘s comp of the subtrahend to the minuend . If there is a carry out , ignore it , look at the sign bit I,e, MSB of the sum term .If the MSB is a 0, the result is positive.& it is in true binary form. If the MSB is a ` (carry in or no carry at all) the result is negative.& is in its 2‘s comp form. Take its 2‘s comp to find its magnitude in binary.

Ex: Subtract 14 from 46 using 8 bit 2‘s comp arithmetic:

+14 = 00001110
-14 = 11110010 2‘s comp

+46 = 00101110
-14 =+11110010 2‘s comp form of -14

-32 (1)00100000 ignore carry

Ignore carry , The MSB is 0 . so the result is +ve. & is in normal binary form. So the result is +00100000=+32.

EX: Add -75 to +26 using 8 bit 2‘s comp arithmetic

+75 = 01001011
-75 =10110101 2‘s comp

+26 = 00011010
-75 =+10110101 2‘s comp form of -75

-49 11001111 No carry

No carry , MSB is a 1, result is _ve & is in 2‘s comp. The magnitude is 2‘s comp of 11001111. i.e, 00110001 = 49. so result is -49

Ex: add -45.75 to +87.5 using 12 bit arithmetic

+87.5 = 01010111.1000
-45.75=+11010010.0100

___ _____
-41.75 (1)00101001.1100 ignore carry
MSB is 0, result is +ve. =+41.75

1's compliment of n number:

- It is obtained by simply complimenting each bit of the no,.& also , 1's comp of a no, is subtracting each bit of the no. form 1.This complemented value rep the –ve of the original no. One of the difficulties of using 1's comp is its rep o f zero.Both 00000000 & its 1's comp 11111111 rep zero.
- The 00000000 called +ve zero& 11111111 called –ve zero.

Ex: -99 & -77.25 in 8 bit 1's comp

+99 = 01100011
-99 = 10011100

+77.25 = 01001101.0100
-77.25 = 10110010.1011

1's compliment arithmetic:

In 1's comp subtraction, add the 1's comp of the subtrahend to the minuend. If there is a carryout , bring the carry around & add it to the LSB called the **end around carry.** Look at the sign bit (MSB) . If this is a 0, the result is +ve & is in true binary. If the MSB is a 1 (carry or no carry), the result is –ve & is in its is comp form .Take its 1's comp to get the magnitude inn binary.

Ex: Subtract 14 from 25 using 8 bit 1's

25 = 00011001
-45 = 11110001

+11 (1)00001010
+1
00001011

MSB is a 0 so result is +ve (binary)

$=+11_{10}$

EX: ADD -25 to +14

+14 =00001110
-25 =+11100110

-11 11110100

No carry MSB =1
result=-ve=-11_{10}

Double precision no.s:

For any computer the word length is fixed . in a 16 bit computer, i.e., with a 16 bit word length, only no.s from $+2^{16-1}$(+32,767) to -2^{16-1}(+32,768) can be expressed in each register.

If no. is greater than this, two storage locations need to be used. i.e, each such no. has to be stored in two registers called Double Precision.

Leaving the MSB which is the sign bit, allows a 31 bit no. length with two 16 bit registers. If still larger no.s are to be expressed, there registers are used to store each no. called Triple Precision.

Floating Point NO.s:

In decimal system, very large & very small no.s expressed in scientific notation by stating a no. (mantissa) & an exponent of 10.
Binary no.s can be expressed in same notation by an exponent of 2.

Mantissa	Exponent
0110000000	100101

16 bit word contains two parts:10 bit mantissa , 6 bit exponent.i.e, in 2‘s comp form & in that MSB is sign bit.

Mantissa = +0.110000000
Exponent= 100101
Actual exponent = 100101-100000=000101
Entire no. =N= $+0.1100_2 \times 2^5 = 11000_2 = 24_{10}$

Many formats of floating pt.no.s.Someuse 2 words for mantissa, one for exponent .other use 2 & half words for mantissa & half for exponent.
Depending on the accuracy desired. some use excess n notation for the exponent, some use 2‘s comp notation for mantissa &some use sign magnitude for both mantissa & exponent.

The Octal Number System:

It is used by early minicomputers. It is also a positional weights system. Its base or radix is 8.It has 8 independent symbols 0, 1,2,3,4,5,6,7. Since its base $8=2^3$, every 3-bit group of binary can be rep by an octal digit. An octal no. is, 1/3 rd the length of the corresponding binary no.

Octal to Binary conversion:

Just replace each octal digit by its 3 bit binary equivalent.

Ex:

367.52_8 to binary
Given octal no is 367.52

3	6	7	.	5	2
011	110	111		101	010

$= 011110111.101010_2$

Binary to Octal conversion:

Starting from the binary pt. make groups of 3 bits each, on either side of the binary pt, & replace each 3 bit binary group by the equivalent octal digit.

Ex:

Convert 110101.101010_2 to octal

Group of 3	110	101	.	101	010
	6	5	.	5	2

$=65.52_8$

Ex:

10101111001.0111_2

10	101	111	001	.	011	1
010	101	111	001	.	011	100
2	5	7	1	.	3	4

$=2571.34_8$

Octal to decimal Conversion:

Multiply each digit in the octal no by the weight of its position & add all the product terms Decimal value of the octal no.

$d_n\, d_{n-1}\, d_{n-2}\, \ldots\ldots\ldots d_1\, d_0.d_{-1}\, d_{-2}\, d_{-3}\, \ldots\ldots\ldots d_{-k}$ is

$(d_n \times 8^n)+(d_{n-1} \times 8^{n-1})+ \ldots\ldots\ldots(d_1 \times 8^1)+(d_0 \times 8^0)+(d_{-1} \times 8^{-1})(d_{-2} \times 8^2) \ldots\ldots$

Ex: convert 4057.06_8 to octal

$=4x8^3+0x8^2+5x8^1+7x8^0+0x8^{-1}+6x8^{-2}$

$=2048+0+40+7+0+0.0937$

$=2095.0937_{10}$

Decimal to Octal Conversion:

To convert a mixed decimal no. To a mixed octal no. convert the integer and fraction parts separately. To convert decimal integer no. to octal, successively divide the given no by 8 till the quotient is 0. The last remainder is the MSD .The remainder read upwards give the equivalent octal integer no. To convert the given decimal fraction to octal, successively multiply the decimal fraction&the subsequent decimal fractions by 8 till the product is 0 or till the required accuracy is the MSD. The integers to the left of the octal pt read downwards give the octal fraction.

Ex: convert 378.93_{10} to octal

378_{10} tooctal: Successive division:

8 | 378
8 | 47 --- 2
8 | 5 --- 7 ↑
0 --- 5

$=572_8$

0.93_{10} to octal :

0.93x8=7.44
0.44x8=3.52 ↓
0.53x8=4.16
0.16x8=1.28

$=0.7341_8$

$378.93_{10}=572.7341_8$

EX: 5497_{10} to binary

8 | 5497
8 | 687 --- 1
8 | 85 --- 7 ↑
8 | 10 --- 5
8 | 1--- 2
0 --- 1 ↑ $=12571_8=001010101111001_2$

Conversion of large deciml no.s to binary & large binary no.s to decimal can be conveniently & quickly performed via octal

EX:101111010001_2 to decimal

$101111010001_2 = 5721_8 = 5x8^3+7x8^2+2x8^1+1x8^0$

$=2560+448+16+1=3025_{10}$

Octal Arithmetic:

The rules are similar to the decimal or binary arithmetic.This no. system used to enter long strings of binary data in a digital system like a microcomputer. Arithmetic operations canbe performed by converting the octal no.s to binary no.s & then using the rules of binary arithmetic. Octal subtraction can be performed using 1‘s compliment method or 2‘s comp method & can also be performed directly by 7‘s & 8‘s comp methods of decimal system.

Ex: Add $(27.5)_8$ $(74.4)_8$ Subtract 45_8 from 66_8

27.5_8	=	$010\ 111\ .\ 101_2$	66_8		$=00\ 110\ 110_2$
$+74.4_8$	=	$+1111000.100_2$	-45_8		$=+11\ 011\ 011_2$
124.1_8		$1010\ 100.\ 001$			$(1)00\ 010\ 001_2$
					Ignore carry ans: +ve.

Multiplication & division can slso be performed using the binary rep. of octal no.s & then making use of multiplication & division rules of binaryno.s

The Hexadecimal number system:

Binary no.s are long & fine for machines but are too lengthy to be handled by human benigs. So rep binary no.s concisely with their objective is the hexadecimal no system(or hex) . It is a positional weighted system.The base or radix of there is 16 i.e, it has 16 independent symbols 0,1,2, 9,A,B,C,D,E,F. since its base is $16=2^4$, every 4 binary digit combination can be rep by one hexa decimal digit . so a hexadecimal no is ¼ th the length of the corresponding binary no..A 4 bit group is **nibble.**

Hexadecimal counting system:

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 1A 1B 1C 1D 1E 1F

: ;

: :

: :

F0 F1 F2 ..... FF

100 101 ..... 10F

: :

: :

1F0 1F1 ..... 1FF

Binary to Hexadecimal conversion:

For this make groups of 4 bits each , on either side of the binary pt & replace each 4 bit group by the equivalent hexadecimal digit.

Hexadecimal	Binary
0	0000
1	0001
2	0010
3	0011
4	0100
5	0101
6	0110
7	0111
8	1000
9	1001
A	1010
B	1011
C	1100
D	1101
E	1110
F	1111

EX: 1011011011_2

groups of 4-bits: 0010 1101 1011

2 D B $=2DB_{16}$

Hexadecimal to binary conversion:

Replace each hex digit by its 4-bit binary group.

Ex: $4BAC_{10}$ to binary

4 B A C

0100 1011 1010 1100

$=0100101110101100_2$

Hexadecimal to Decimal conversion:

Multiply each dihit in the hex no. by its position weight & add all those product terms .

Hex no is: $d_n\, d_{n-1}\, d_{n-2} \ldots\ldots\ldots d_1\, d_0.d_{-1}\, d_{-2}\, d_{-3} \ldots\ldots\ldots d_{-k}$

In decimal equivalent is given by$(d_n \times 16^n)+(d_{n-1} \times 16^{n-1})+ \ldots\ldots\ldots(d_1 \times 16^1)+(d_0 \times 16^0)+(d_{-1} \times 16^{-1})+(d_{-2} \times 16^{-2})$

Ex: $5C7_{16}$ to decimal

$(5x16^2)+(C\ x16^1)+ (7\ x16^0)$

$=1280+192+7.$

$=147_{10}$

Decimal to Hexadecimal conversion:

It is successively divide the given decimal no. by 16 till the quotient is zero. The last remainder is the MSB. The remainder read from bottom to top gives the equivalent hexadecimal integer. To convert a decimal fraction to hexadecimal successively multiply the given decimal fraction & subsequent decimal fractions by 16, till the product is zero. Or till the required accuracy is obtained,and collect all the integers to the left of decimal pt. The first integer is MSB & the integer read from top to bottom give the hexadecimal fraction known as **the hexadabble method.**

Ex: 2598.67510

16|2598

16162 -6

10 -2

= A26 (16)

0.67510=0.675x16 -- 10.8

=0.800x16 -- 12.8↓

=0.800x16 -- 12.8 $=0.ACCC_{16}$

=0.800x16 -- 12.8

$2598.675_{10} = A26.ACCC_{16}$

Ex: 49056_{10}

		decimal		hexa	binary
16 | 49056					
16 | 3066	---	0		0	000
16 | 191	---	10		A	1010
16 | 11	---	15	↑	F	1111
0	---	11		B	1011

$= BFA0_{16}= 1011,1111,1010,0000_2$

Octal to hexadecimal conversion:

The simplest way is to first convert the given octal no. to binary & then the binary no. to hexadecimal.

Ex: 756.603_8

7	5	6	.	6	0	3
111	101	110	.	110	000	011
0001	1110	1110	.	1100	0001	1000
1	E	E	.	C	1	8

Hexa decimal to octal conversion:

First convert the given hexadecimal no. to binary & then the binary no. to octal .

Ex: B9F.AE16

B	9	F	.	A	E		
1011	1001	1111	.	1010	1110		
101	110	011	111	.	101	011	100
5	6	3	7	.	5	3	4

=5637.534

Hexadecimal Arithmetic:

The rules for arithmetic is same as decimal octal & binary. Arithmetic operations are not done directly in hex. The hex no.s are first converted into binary & arithmetic operations are done in binary. Hex decimal subtraction can be performed using 1‘s compliment method or 2‘s compliment methods performed directly by 15‘s & 16‘s compliment methods. Similar to the 9‘s & 10‘s compliment of decimal system..

Ex:: Add $6E_{16}$ & $C5_{16}$

$6E_{16}$ $=0110\ 1110_2$

$C5_{16}=$ $+1100\ 0101_2$

133_{16} $1010\ 100.\ 001$

Subtract $7B_{16}$ from $C4_{16}$

$C4_{16}$ $=1100\ 0100_2$

$-7B_{16}$ $=+100001\ 01_2$

49_{16} $(1)010\ 010\ 01_2$

Ignore carry ans: +ve.

8421 BCD code (Natural BCD code):

Each decimal digit 0 through 9 is coded by a 4 bit binary no. called natural binary codes. Because of the 8,4,2,1 weights attached to it. It is a weighted code & also sequential . it is useful for mathematical operations. The advantage of this code is its case of conversion to & from decimal. It is less efficient than the pure binary, it require more bits.

Ex: 14→1110 in binary

But as 0001 0100 in 8421 ode.

The disadvantage of the BCD code is that , arithmetic operations are more complex than they are in pure binary . There are 6 illegal combinations 1010,1011,1100,1101,1110,1111 in these codes, they are not part of the 8421 BCD code system . The disadvantage of 8421 code is, the rules of binary addition 8421 no, but only to the individual 4 bit groups.

BCD Addition:

It is individually adding the corresponding digits of the decimal no,s expressed in 4 bit binary groups starting from the LSD . If there is no carry & the sum term is not an illegal code , no correction is needed .If there is a carry out of one group to the next group or if the sum term is an illegal code then 6_{10}(0100) is added to the sum term of that group & the resulting carry is added to the next group.

Ex: Perform decimal additions in 8421 code

(a)25+13

In BCD 25= 0010 0101
In BCD +13 =+0001 0011

38 0011 1000

No carry , no illegal code .This is the corrected sum

(b). 679.6 + 536.8

679.6 = 0110 0111 1001 .0110 in BCD
+536.8 = +0101 0011 0010 .1000 in BCD
1216.4 1011 1010 0110 . 1110 illegal codes
+0110 + 0011 +0110 . + 0110 add 0110 to each

(1)0001 (1)0000 (1)0101 . (1)0100 propagate carry
/ / / /
+1 +1 +1 +1

0001 0010 0001 0110 . 0100

1 2 1 6 . 4

BCD Subtraction:

Performed by subtracting the digits of each 4 bit group of the subtrahend the digits from the corresponding 4- bit group of the minuend in binary starting from the LSD . if there is no borrow from the next group , then 6_{10}(0110)is subtracted from the difference term of this group.

(a)38-15

In BCD 38= 0011 1000
In BCD -15 = -0001 0101

23 0010 0011

No borrow, so correct difference.

.(b) 206.7-147.8

206.7 = 0010 0000 0110 . 0111 in BCD
-147.8 = -0001 0100 0111 . 0110 in BCD

58.9 0000 1011 1110 . 1111 borrows are present
-0110 -0110 . -0110 subtract 0110

0101 1000 . 1001

BCD Subtraction using 9's & 10's compliment methods:

Form the 9's & 10's compliment of the decimal subtrahend & encode that no. in the 8421 code . the resulting BCD no.s are then added.

EX: 305.5 – 168.8

305.5 = 305.5
-168.8= +83.1 9's comp of -168.8

(1)136.6
+1 end around carry
136.7 corrected difference

305.5_{10} = 0011 0000 0101 . 0101
$+831.1_{10}$ = +1000 0011 0001 . 0001 9's comp of 168.8 in BCD

+1011 0011 0110 . 0110 1011 is illegal code
+0110 add 0110

(1)0001 0011 0110 . 0110
+1 End around carry

0001 0011 0110 . 0111
= 136.7

Excess three(xs-3)code:

It is a non-weighted BCD code .Each binary codeword is the corresponding 8421 codeword plus 0011(3).It is a sequential code & therefore , can be used for arithmetic operations..It is a self-complementing code.s o the subtraction by the method of compliment addition is more direct in xs-3 code than that in 8421 code. The xs-3 code has six invalid states 0000,0010,1101,1110,1111.. It has interesting properties when used in addition & subtraction.

Excess-3 Addition:

Add the xs-3 no.s by adding the 4 bit groups in each column starting from the LSD. If there is no carry starting from the addition of any of the 4-bit groups , subtract 0011 from the sum term of those groups (because when 2 decimal digits are added in xs-3 & there is no carry , result in xs-6). If there is a carry out, add 0011 to the sum term of those groups(because when there is a carry, the invalid states are skipped and the result is normal binary).

EX:	37	0110	1010	
	+28	+0101	1011	
	65	1011	(1)0101	carry generated
		+1		propagate carry
		1100	0101	add 0011 to correct 0101 &
		-0011	+0011	subtract 0011 to correct 1100
		1001	1000	$=65_{10}$

Excess -3 (XS-3) Subtraction:

Subtract the xs-3 no.s by subtracting each 4 bit group of the subtrahend from the corresponding 4 bit group of the minuend starting form the LSD .if there is no borrow from the next 4-bit group add 0011 to the difference term of such groups (because when decimal digits are subtracted in xs-3 & there is no borrow , result is normal binary). I f there is a borrow , subtract 0011 from the differenceterm(b coz taking a borrow is equivalent to adding six invalid states , result is in xs-6)

Ex: 267-175

267 = 0101 1001 1010
-175= -0100 1010 1000

0000 1111 0010
+0011 -0011 +0011

0011 1100 +0011 $=92_{10}$

Xs-3 subtraction using 9's & 10's compliment methods:

Subtraction is performed by the 9's compliment or 10's compliment

Ex:687-348 The subtrahend (348) xs -3 code & its compliment are:

9's comp of 348 = 651
Xs-3 code of 348 = 0110 0111 1011
1's comp of 348 in xs-3 = 1001 1000 0100
Xs=3 code of 348 in xs=3 = 1001 1000 0100

687		687		
-348	→	+651 9's compl of 348		
339		(1)338		
		+1 end around carry		
		339	corrected difference in decimal	
1001		1011	1010	687 in xs-3
+1001		1000	0100	1's comp 348 in xs-3
(1)0010		(1)0011	1110	carry generated
+1		+1		propagate carry
(1)0011		0010	1110	
			+1	end around carry
0011		0011	1111	(correct 1111 by sub0011 and
+0011		+0011	+0011	correct both groups of 0011 by adding 0011)
0110		0110	1100	corrected diff in xs-3 = 330_{10}

The Gray code (reflective –code):

Gray code is a non-weighted code & is not suitable for arithmetic operations. It is not a BCD code . It is a cyclic code because successive code words in this code differ in one bit position only i.e, it is a unit distance code.Popular of the unit distance code.It is also a reflective code i.e,both reflective & unit distance. The n least significant bits for 2^n through 2^{n+1}-1 are the mirror images of thosr for 0 through 2^n-1.An N bit gray code can be obtained by reflecting an N- 1 bit code about an axis at the end of the code, & putting the MSB of 0 above the axis & the MSB of 1 below the axis.

Reflection of gray codes:

Gray Code				Decimal	4 bit binary
1 bit	2 bit	3 bit	4 bit		
0	00	000	0000	0	0000
1	01	001	0001	1	0001
	11	011	0011	2	0010
	10	010	0010	3	0011
		110	0110	4	0100
		111	0111	5	0101
		101	0101	6	0110
		110	0100	7	0111
			1100	8	1000
			1101	9	1001
			1111	10	1010
			1110	11	1011
			1010	12	1100
			1011	13	1101
			1001	14	1110
			1000	15	1111

Binary to Gray conversion:

N bit binary no is rep by $B_n\ B_{n-1}$----------B_1

Gray code equivalent is by $G_n\ G_{n-1}$----------G_1

B_n,, G_n are the MSB's then the gray code bits are obtaind from the binary code as

$G_n=B_n$	$G_{n-1}=B_n \oplus$ Bn-1	$G_{n-2}=B_{n-1} \oplus$ Bn-	----------	$G_1=B_2 \oplus B1$	

$\oplus$→EX-or symbol

Procedure: ex-or the bits of the binary no with those of the binary no shifted one position to the right . The LSB of the shifted no. is discarded & the MSB of the gray code no.is the same as the MSB of the original binaryno.

EX: 10001

(a). Binary : $1 \oplus \rightarrow 0 \oplus \rightarrow 0 \oplus \rightarrow 1$

Gray : 1 1 0 1

(b). Binary: 1 0 0 1

Shifted binary: 1 0 0 (1)

1 1 0 1→gray

Gray to Binary Conversion:

If an n bit gray no. is rep by $G_n\ G_{n-1}$ ---------- G_1

its binary equivalent by $B_n\ B_{n-1}$ ---------- B_1 then the binary bits are obtained from gray bits as

$B_n = G_n$	$B_{n-1} = B_n \oplus G_{n-1}$	$B_{n-2} = \oplus\ G_{n-2}$	----------	$B_1 = B_2 \oplus G_1$

To convert no. in any system into given no. first convert it into binary & then binary to gray. To convert gray no into binary no & convert binary no into require no system.

Ex:10110010(gray) = 11011100_2= DC_{16}=334_8=220_{10}

EX:1101

Gray: 1 1 0 1

Binary:1 0 0 1

Ex: $3A7_{16}$= 0011,1010,0111_2=1001110100(gray)

527_8=101,011,011_2=111110110(gray)

652_{10}=1010001100_2= 1111001010(gray)

XS-3 gray code:

In a normal gray code , the bit patterns for 0(0000) & 9(1101) do not have a unit distance between them i.e, they differ in more than one position.In xs-3 gray code , each decimal digit is encoded with gray code patter of the decimal digit that is greater by 3. It has a unit distance between the patterns for 0 & 9.

XS-3 gray code for decimal digits 0 through 9

Decimal digit	Xs-3 gray code	Decimal digit	Xs-3 gray code
0	0010	5	1100
1	0110	6	1101
2	0111	7	1111
3	0101	8	1110
4	0100	9	1010

Error – Detecting codes: When binary data is transmitted & processed,it is susceptible to noise that can alter or distort its contents. The 1‘s may get changed to 0‘s & 1‘s .because digital systems must be accurate to the digit, error can pose a problem. Several schemes have been devised to detect the occurrence of a single bit error in a binary word, so that whenever such an error occurs the concerned binary word can be corrected & retransmitted.

Parity: The simplest techniques for detecting errors is that of adding an extra bit known as parity bit to each word being transmitted.Two types of parity**:** Oddparity**,** evenparity forodd parity, the parity bit is set to a _0‘ or a _1‘ at the transmitter such that the total no. of 1 bit in the word including the parity bit is an odd no.For even parity, the parity bit is set to a _0‘ or a _1‘ at the transmitter such that the parity bit is an even no.

Decimal	8421 code	Odd parity	Even parity
0	0000	1	0
1	0001	0	1
2	0010	0	1
3	0011	1	0
4	0100	0	1
5	0100	1	0
6	0110	1	0
7	0111	0	1
8	1000	0	1
9	1001	1	0

When the digit data is received . a parity checking circuit generates an error signal if the total no of 1‘s is even in an odd parity system or odd in an even parity system. This parity check can always detect a single bit error but cannot detect 2 or more errors with in the same word.Odd parity is used more often than even parity does not detect the situation. Where all 0‘s are created by a short ckt or some other fault condition.

Ex: Even parity scheme

(a) 10101010 (b) 11110110 (c)10111001

Ans:

(a) No. of 1‘s in the word is even is 4 so there is no error
(b) No. of 1‘s in the word is even is 6 so there is no error
(c) No. of 1‘s in the word is odd is 5 so there is error

Ex: odd parity

(a)10110111 (b) 10011010 (c)11101010

Ans:

(a) No. of 1‘s in the word is even is 6 so word has error
(b) No. of 1‘s in the word is even is 4 so word has error
(c) No. of 1‘s in the word is odd is 5 so there is no error

Checksums:

Simple parity can‘t detect two errors within the same word. To overcome this, use a sort of 2 dimensional parity. As each word is transmitted, it is added to the sum of the previously transmitted words, and the sum retained at the transmitter end. At the end of transmission, the sum called the check sum. Up to that time sent to the receiver. The receiver can check its sum with the transmitted sum. If the two sums are the same, then no errors were detected at the receiver end. If there is an error, the receiving location can ask for retransmission of the entire data, used in teleprocessing systems.

Block parity:

Block of data shown is create the row & column parity bits for the data using odd parity. The parity bit 0 or 1 is added column wise & row wise such that the total no. of 1‘s in each column & row including the data bits & parity bit is odd as

Data	Parity bit
10110	0
10001	1
10101	0
00010	0
11000	1
00000	1
11010	0

data
10110
10001
10101
00010
11000
00000
11010

Error –Correcting Codes:

A code is said to be an error –correcting code, if the code word can always be deduced from an erroneous word. For a code to be a single bit error correcting code, the minimum distance of that code must be three. The minimum distance of that code is the smallest no. of bits by which any two code words must differ. A code with minimum distance of 3 can‘t only correct single bit errors but also detect (can‘t correct) two bit errors, The key to error correction is that it must be possible to detect & locate erroneous that it must be possible to detect & locate erroneous digits. If the location of an error has been determined. Then by complementing the erroneous digit, the message can be corrected , error correcting , code is the Hamming code , In this , to each group of m information or message or data bits, K parity checking bits denoted by P1,P2,----------pk located at positions 2^{k-1} from left are added to form an (m+k) bit code word. To correct the error, k parity checks are performed on selected digits of each code word, & the position of the error bit is located by forming an error word, & the error bit is then complemented. The k bit error word is generated by putting a 0 or a 1 in the 2^{k-1}th position depending upon whether the check for parity involving the parity bit P_k is satisfied or not.Error positions & their corresponding values :

Error Position	For 15 bit code $C_4 C_3 C_2 C_1$	For 12 bit code $C_4 C_3 C_2 C_1$	For 7 bit code $C_3 C_2 C_1$
0	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0	0 0 0
1	0 0 0 1	0 0 0 1	0 0 1
2	0 0 1 0	0 0 1 0	0 1 0
3	0 0 1 1	0 0 1 1	0 1 1
4	0 1 0 0	0 1 0 0	1 0 0
5	0 1 0 1	0 1 0 1	1 0 1
6	0 1 1 0	0 1 1 0	1 1 0
7	0 1 1 1	0 1 1 1	1 1 1
8	1 0 0 0	1 0 0 0	
9	1 0 0 1	1 0 0 1	
10	1 0 1 0	1 0 1 0	
11	1 0 1 1	1 0 1 1	
12	1 1 0 0	1 1 0 0	
13	1 1 0 1		
14	1 1 1 0		
15	1 1 1 1		

7-bit Hamming code:

To transmit four data bits, 3 parity bits located at positions 2^0 21&2^2 from left are added to make a 7 bit codeword which is then transmitted.

The word format

P_1	P_2	D_3	P_4	D_5	D_6	D_7

D—Data bits P—
Parity bits

Decimal Digit	For BCD $P_1P_2D_3P_4D_5D_6D_7$	For Excess-3 $P_1P_2D_3P_4D_5D_6D_7$
0	0 0 0 0 0 0 0	1 0 0 0 0 1 1
1	1 1 0 1 0 0 1	1 0 0 1 1 0 0
2	0 1 0 1 0 1 1	0 1 0 0 1 0 1
3	1 0 0 0 0 1 1	1 1 0 0 1 1 0
4	1 0 0 1 1 0 0	0 0 0 1 1 1 1
5	0 1 0 0 1 0 1	1 1 1 0 0 0 0
6	1 1 0 0 1 1 0	0 0 1 1 0 0 1
7	0 0 0 1 1 1 1	1 0 1 1 0 1 0
8	1 1 1 0 0 0 0	0 1 1 0 0 1 1
9	0 0 1 1 0 0 1	0 1 1 1 1 0 0

Ex: Encode the data bits 1101 into the 7 bit even parity Hamming Code

The bit pattern is

$P_1P_2D_3P_4D_5D_6D_7$

1 1 0 1

Bits 1,3,5,7 (P_1 111) must have even parity, so P_1 =1

Bits 2, 3, 6, 7(P_2 101) must have even parity, so P_2 =0

Bits 4,5,6,7 (P_4 101)must have even parity, so P_4 =0

The final code is 1010101

EX: Code word is 1001001

Bits 1,3,5,7 (C_1 1001) →no error →put a 0 in the 1‘s position→C_1=0

Bits 2, 3, 6, 7(C_2 0001)) → error →put a 1 in the 2‘s position→C_2=1

Bits 4,5,6,7 (C_4 1001)) →no error →put a 0 in the 4‘s position→C_3=0

15-bit Hamming Code: It transmit 11 data bits, 4 parity bits located 2^0 2^1 2^2 2^3

Word format is

P_1	P_2	D_3	P_4	D_5	D_6	D_7	P_8	D_9	D_{10}	D_{11}	D_{12}	D_{13}	D_{14}	D_{15}

12-Bit Hamming Code: It transmit 8 data bits, 4 parity bits located at position 2^0 2^1 2^2 2^3

Word format is

P_1	P_2	D_3	P_4	D_5	D_6	D_7	P_8	D_9	D_{10}	D_{11}	D_{12}

Alphanumeric Codes:

These codes are used to encode the characteristics of alphabet in addition to the decimal digits. It is used for transmitting data between computers & its I/O device such as printers, keyboards & video display terminals.Popular modern alphanumeric codes are ASCII code & EBCDIC code.

MODULE II:
Boolean Algebra & Boolean functions

Boolean Algebra

Switching circuits called Logic circuits, gate circuits & digital circuits. Switching algebra called Boolean Algebra. Boolean algebra is a system of mathematical logic. It is an algebraic system consisting of the set of element (0.1) two binary operators called OR & AND & One unary operator NOT. Binary Digits 0 & 1 used to represent two voltage levels. Binary 1 is for high i.e, +5v . Binary 0 for Low i.e, 0v.
A+A=A A.A=A because variable has only a logic value.
Also there are some theorems of Boolean Algebra.

1. (*a*) A + A = A	(*b*) A.A = A	Tautology Law
2. (*a*) A + 1 = 1	(*b*) A.0 = 0	Union Law
3. (A′)′ = A		Involution Law
4. (*a*) A + (B + C) = (A + B) + C	(*b*) A.(B.C) = (A.B).C	Associative Law
5. (*a*) (A + B)′ = A′B′	(*b*) (A.B)′ = A′ + B′	De Morgan's Law
6. (*a*) A + AB = A	(*b*) A(A + B) = A	Absorption Law
7. (*a*) A + A′B = A + B	(*b*) A(A′ + B) = AB	
8. (*a*) AB + AB′ = A	(*b*) (A + B) (A + B′) = A	Logical adjancy
9. (*a*) AB + A′C + BC = AB + A′C	(*b*) (A + B) (A′ + C) (B + C) = (A + B)	Consensus Law

Logic Operators:

AND,OR,NOT are 3 basic operations or functions that performed in Boolean Algebra. & derived operations as NAND , NOR,X-OR, X-NOR.

AXIOMS & Laws of Boolean Algebra:

Axioms or Postulates are a set of logical expressions i.e, without proof. & also we can build a set of useful theorems. Each axiom can be interpreted as the outcome of an operation performed by a logic gate.

AND	OR	NOT
0.0=0	0+0=0	1=0
0.1=0	0+1=1	0=1
1.0=0	1+0=1	
1.1=1	1+1=1	

Complementation Laws:

Complement means invert(0 as 1 & 1 as 0)
Law1:0=1
Law2:1=0

Law3:If A=0 then =1
Law4:If A=1 then =0
Law5: =A(double complementation law)

AND laws:

Law 1: A.0=0(Null law)
Law 2:A.1=A(Identity law)
Law 3:A.A=A
Law 4:A. =0

OR laws:

Law 1: A+0=A(Null law)
Law 2:A+1=1
Law 3:A+A=A
Law 4:A+ =0

Commutative laws: allow change in position of AND or OR variables.

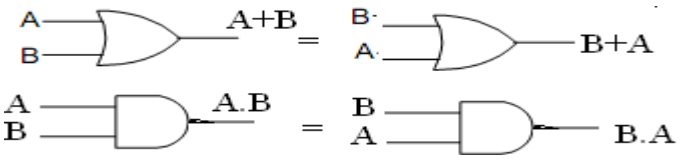
2 commutative laws

Law 1: A+B=B+A

Law 2: A.B=B.A

A B	A+B	=	B A	B+A
0 0	0		0 0	0
0 1	1		0 1	1
1 0	1		1 0	1
1 1	1		1 1	1

A.B	B.A
0	0
0	0
0	0
1	1

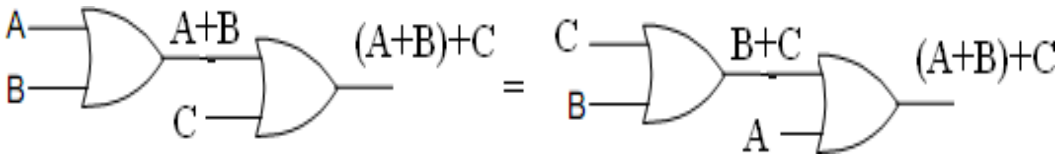


Associative laws: This allows grouping of variables. It has 2 laws.

Law 1: (A+B)+C=A+(B+C) =A OR B ORed with C

This law can be extended to any no. of variables

(A+B+C)+D=(A+B+C)+D=(A+B)+(C+D)



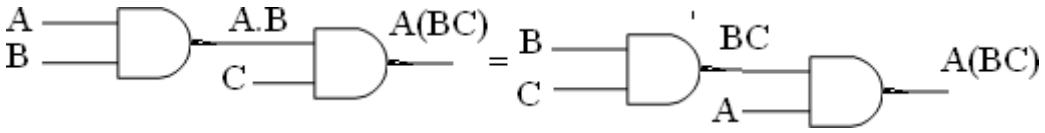
A B C	A+B	(A+B)+C
0 0 0	0	0
0 0 1	0	1
0 1 0	1	1
0 1 1	1	1
1 0 0	1	1
1 0 1	1	1
1 1 0	1	1
1 1 1	1	1

=

A B C	B+C	A+(B+C)
0 0 0	0	0
0 0 1	1	1
0 1 0	1	1
0 1 1	1	1
1 0 0	0	1
1 0 1	1	1
1 1 0	1	1
1 1 1	1	1

Law2: (A.B).C=A(B.C)

This law can be extended to any no. of variables
(A.B.C).D=(A.B.C).D



A B C	AB	(AB)C
0 0 0	0	0
0 0 1	0	0
0 1 0	0	0
0 1 1	0	0
1 0 0	0	0
1 0 1	0	0
1 1 0	1	0
1 1 1	1	1

=

A B C	BC	A(BC)
0 0 0	0	0
0 0 1	0	0
0 1 0	0	0
0 1 1	1	0
1 0 0	0	0
1 0 1	0	0
1 1 0	0	0
1 1 1	1	1

Distributive Laws:

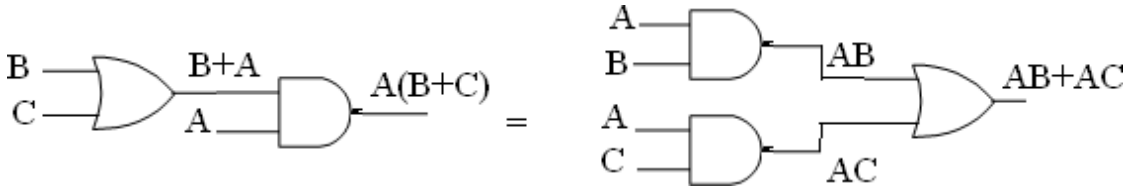
This has 2 laws

Law 1.A(B+C)=AB+AC

This law applies to single variables.

EX:ABC(D+E)=ABCD+ABCE

AB(CD+EF)=ABCD+ABEF



A B C	B+C	A(B+C)
0 0 0	0	0
0 0 1	1	0
0 1 0	1	0
0 1 1	1	0
1 0 0	0	0
1 0 1	1	1
1 1 0	1	1
1 1 1	1	1

=

A B C	AB	AC	AB+AC
0 0 0	0	0	0
0 0 1	0	0	0
0 1 0	0	0	0
0 1 1	0	0	0
1 0 0	0	0	0
1 0 1	0	1	1
1 1 0	1	0	1
1 1 1	1	1	1

Law 2.A+BC=(A+B)(A+C)

RHF=(A+B)(A+C)

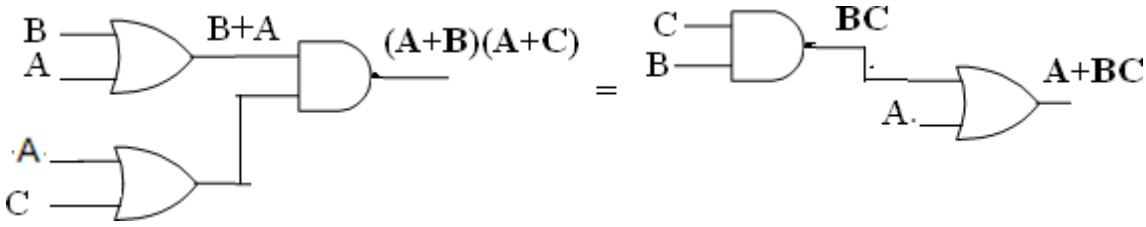
=AA+AC+BA+BC

=A+AC+AB+BC

=A(1+C+B)+BC

=A.1+BC

=A+BC LHF



A B C	BC	A+BC
0 0 0	0	0
0 0 1	0	0
0 1 0	0	0
0 1 1	1	1
1 0 0	0	1
1 0 1	0	1
1 1 0	0	1
1 1 1	1	1

A B C	A+B	A+C	(A+B)(A+C)
0 0 0	0	0	0
0 0 1	1	1	0
0 1 0	1	0	0
0 1 1	1	1	0
1 0 0	0	1	0
1 0 1	1	1	1
1 1 0	1	1	1
1 1 1	1	1	1

Redundant Literal Rule(RLR):

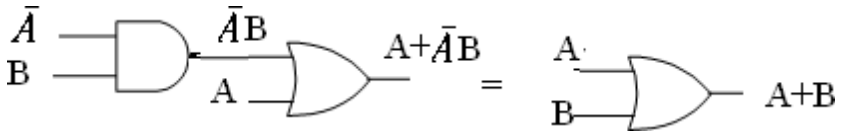
Law 1: A+ B=A+B

LHF = (A+)(A+B)

=1.(A+B)

=A+B RHF

ORing of a variable with the AND of the compliment of that variable with another variable, is equal to the ORing of the two variables.



A B	B	A+ B
0 0	0	0
0 1	1	1
1 0	0	1
1 1	0	1

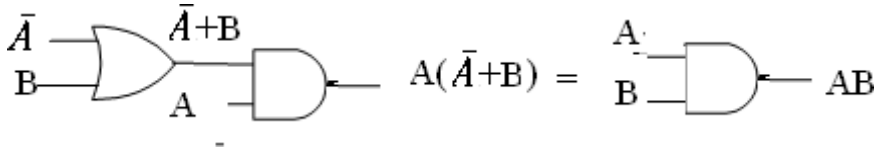
=

A	B	A+B
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	1	1
1	1	1

Law 2:A(+B)=AB

LHF = A +AB
=0+AB
=AB RHF

ANDing of a variable with the OR of the complement of that variable with another variable , is equal to the ANDing of the two variables.



A B	+B	A(
0 0	1	0
0 1	1	0
1 0	0	0
1 1	1	1

=

A	B	A+B
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	1	0
1	1	1

Idempotence Laws:

Idempotence means same value. It has 2 laws.

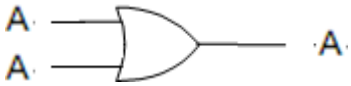
Law 1=A.A=A

This law states that ANDing of a variable with itself is equal to that variable only.

If A=0, then A.A=0.0=0=A
If A=1, then A.A=1.1=1=A

Law 2=A+A=A

This law states that ORing of a variable with itself is equal to that variable only.



If A=0, then A+A=0+0=0=A
If A=1, then A+A=1+1=1=A

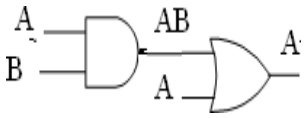
Absorption Laws:

Law 1=A+A.B=A

= A(1+B)
=A.1
=A

i.e., A+A. any term=A

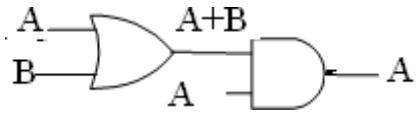
A B		A+ B)
0 0	0	0
0 1	0	0
1 0	0	1
1 1	1	1



Law 2=A(A+B)=A

A(A+B)=A.A+A.B
= A+AB
=A(1+B)
= A.1
=A

A B	+	A(A+B)
0 0	0	0
0 1	1	0
1 0	1	1
1 1	1	1



Consensus theorem:

Theorem 1: AB+ C+BC=AB+ c

LHS: AB+ C+BC
=AB+ C+BC(A+)
=AB+ C+BCA+BC
=AB(1+C)+ c(1)
=AB+ C
RHS

This can be extended to any no. of variables

EX: AB+ C+BCD =AB+

Theorem 2: (A+B)(+)(B+C)=(A+B)(+C)

Transposition Theorem:

AB+ C=(A+C)(
+B) RHS: (A+C)(
+B)

=A +C +AB+CB
=0+ C+AB+BC
= C+AB+BC(A+)
=AB+ABC+ C+ BC
=AB+ C
LHS

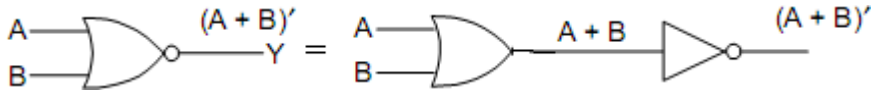
DeMorgans Theorem:

It represents two of the most powerful laws in Boolean algebra

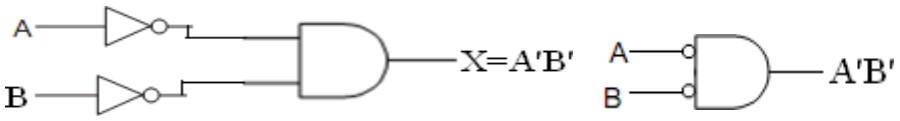
Law 1: + =

This law states that the compliment of a sum of variables is equal to the product of their individual complements.

LHS



RHS



NOR gate Bubbled AND gate

A B	A+B	(A+B)‘
0 0	0	1
0 1	1	0
1 0	1	0
1 1	1	0

A B	A‘ B‘	A‘B‘
0 0	1 1	1
0 1	1 0	0
1 0	0 1	0
1 1	0 0	0

NOR gate= Bubbled AND gate

This can be extended to any variables.
(A+B+C+D+-----)‘=A‘B‘C‘D‘----
Law 2: (AB)‘=A‘+B‘

Complement of the product of variables is equal to the sum of their individual components.

A B	(AB)‘
0 0	1
0 1	1
1 0	1
1 1	0

A B	A‘ B‘	A‘+B‘
0 0	1 1	1
0 1	1 0	1
1 0	0 1	1
1 1	0 0	0

This law also can extend to any no. Of variables.

(ABCD---)‘=A‘+B‘+C‘+D‘+------

It can be extended to complicated expressions by

1. Complement the entire function
2. Change all the ANDs to ORS and all the Ors to ANDS
3. Complement each of the individual variables.
4. Change all 0s to 1s and 1s to 0s.
   This procedure is called demorganization or complementation of switching expressions.

Shannon’s expansion Theorem:

This theorem states that any switching expression can be decomposed w.r.t. a variable A into two parts, one containing A &other containing A‘. It is useful in decomposing complex machines into an interconnection of smaller components.

f(A,B,C---)=A.f(1,B,C---)+A‘.f(0,B,C ---)

f(A,B,C,---)=[A+f(0,B,C,-----)].[A‘+f(1,B,C ----]

Ex: DeMorganize f=((A+B‘)(C+D‘))‘, f=((A+B‘)(C+D‘))‘
=(A+B‘)(C+D‘)
= A.B‘ +C.D‘

=A‘.B+C‘.D

Duality:

In a positive Logic system the more positive of the two voltage levels is represented by a 1 & the more negative by a 0. In a negative logic system the more positive of the two voltage levels is represented by a 0 & more negative by a 1. This distinction between positive &negative logic systems is important because an OR gate in the positive logic system becomes an AND gate in the negative logic system &vice versa. Positive & Negative logics give a basic duality in Boolean identities. Procedure dual identity by changing all _+' (OR) to –.'(AND) & complementing all 0's &1's. Once a theorem or statement is proved, the dual also thus stands proved called Principle of duality.

$[f(A,B,C,\text{-------}0,1,+,.)]_d = f(A,B,C,\text{ --- }1,0,.,+)$

Relations between complement

$(f_c(A,B,C\text{----}) = ((. , - - -) = (f_d(, , ,\text{--})$

$(f_d(A,B,C\text{----}) = ((. , - - -) = (f_c(, , ,\text{--})$

Duals:

Expression	Dual
0=1	1=0
0.1=0	1+0=1
0.0=0	1+1=1
1.1=1	0+0=0
A.0=0	A+1=1
A.1=A	A+0=A
A.A=A	A+A=A
A. =0	A+ =1
A.B=B.A	A+B=B+A
A.(B.C)=(A.B).C	A+(B+C)=(A+B)+C
A.(B+C)=(AB+AC)	A+BC=(A+B)(A+C)
A(A+B)=A	A+AB=A
A.(A.B)=A.B	A+A+B=A+B
= +	+ = +
(A+B)(+C)(B+C)=(A+B)(+C)	AB+ C+BC=AB+ C

Reducing Boolean Expressions:

Procedure:

1. Multiply all variables necessary to remove parenthesis

2. Look for identical terms. Only one of those terms to be retained & other dropped.

Ex: AB+AB+AB+AB=AB

4 Look for a variable & its negation in the same term. This term can be dropped 1
Ex: AB +AB = AB (+1)=AB .1=AB

5 Look for pairs of terms which have the same variables,with one or more variables complemented. If a variable in one term of such a pair is complemented while in the second term it is not then such terms can be combined into a single term with variable dropped.
Ex: AB +AB D= AB (+D)=AB .1=AB unctions

Boolean functions & their representation:

A function of n Boolean variables denoted by $f(x_1,x_2,x_3\text{------}x_n)$ is another variable denoted by & takes one of the two possible values 0 & 1.

The various way of represent a given function is

1. Sum of Product(SOP) form:
   It is called the Disjunctive Normal Form(DNF)
   Ex:f(A,B,C)=(B+ C)
2. Product of Sums (POS) form:
   It is called the Conjunctive Normal Form(CNF).This is implemented usin Consensus theorem.
   Ex:f(A,B,C)=(+B)(B+C)
3. Truth Table form:
   The function is specified by listing all possible combinations of values assumed by the variables & the corresponding values of the function.

Truth table for f(A,B,C)=(B+ C)

Decimal Code	A B C	F(A,B,C)
0	0 0 0	0
1	0 0 1	1
2	0 1 0	1
3	0 1 1	1
4	1 0 0	0
5	1 0 1	1
6	1 1 0	0
7	1 1 1	0

4. Standard Sum of Products form:Called Disjunctive Canonical form (DCF) & also called Expanded SOP form or Canonical SOP form.

f(A,B,C)=(B+ C)= B(C+)+ C(A+)

= C+ B + BC+A C

A Product term contains all the variables of the function either in complemented or Uncomplemented form is called a minterm. A minterm assumes the value 1 only for one combination of the variables. An n variable function can have in all 2^n minterms to 1 is the standard sum of products form of the function. Min terms are denoted as m_0, m1,m2-----. Here suffixes are denoted by the decimal codes.

Ex: 3 variable functions

m_0=

m1= C

m2=

B

m3=

BC

m_7 = CBA no other way of representation in canonical SOP form is , the SUM of minterms for which the function equals 1.Thus

$f(A,B,C)=m_1+m_{2+}m_3+m_5$

The function in DCF is listing the decimal codes of the minterms for which f=1

$f(A,B,C)=\sum m(1,2,3,5)$.

5. Standard Product of Sums form: It is called as Conjunctive Canonical form (CCF). It is also called Expanded POS or Canonical POS.

If =0 (A=1) B=0 C=0, term=0

Thus function f (A, B, C) =(+)(A+B) given by POS

f(A,B,C)=(+ +)(A+B+)

=(+ +) (+ +)(A+B+C)(A+B+)

A sum term which contains each of the n variables in either complemented form is called a *Maxterm.* A maxterm assumes the value _0' only for one combination of the variables. The most there are 2^n maxterms. It is represented as $M_{0,}M_1,M_2$-----. Here the suffixes are decimal codes.

The CCF of $f(A,B,C)=M_0.M_4.M_6.M_7$

$f(A,B,C)=\pi M(0,4,6,7)$

π or ^ represents the product of all maxterms.

6. Octal designation:

m_7	m_6	m_5	m_4	m_3	m_2	m_1	m_0
0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0

7. Karnaugh Map:

Put the Truth Table in a compact form by labeling the row & columns of a map. It is used in the minimization of functions 3,4,5,6 variables.

m_0, m_1, m_2 ----- are minterms

M_0, M_1, M_2, M_3-------- are Maxterms.

Expansion of a Boolean expression in SOP form to the standard SOP form:

1. Write down all the terms.
2. If one or more variables are missing in any term.Expand that term by multiplying it with the sum of each one of the missing variable and its complement.
3. Drop out redundant terms.

* interms of minterms:

1. Write down all the terms.

2. Put Xs in terms where variables must be inserted to form a minterm.
3. Replace the non-complemented variables by 1s and the complemented variables by 0s, and use all combinations of Xs in terms of 0s and 1s to generate minterms.
4. Drop out redundant terms.

Expansion of a Boolean expression in POS form to standard POS form:

1. Write down all the terms.
2. . If one or more variables are missing in any sum term. expand that term by adding the product of each of the missing variable and its complement.
3. Drop out redundant terms.

- Interms of Maxterms:
    1. Write down all the terms.
    2. Put x‘s in terms where variable inserted
    3. Replace complemented variable by 1‘s & non complemented variable by 0‘s.& use all combinations.
    4. Drop out redundant terms.

Conversion between Canonical form:

The complement of a function expressed as the sum of minterms equals the sum of minterms missing from the original function is expressed by those minterms that make the function equal to 1 for those minterms that make the function equal to 0.

Ex: f(A,B,C)=πm(0,2,4,6,7)

Complement is

(, , =∑m(1,3,5).=m_1+m_3+m_5

complement of by deMorgans theorem

f= (m1 + m3 + m5) = 1. 2. 5=M_1 M_3 M_5=πM(1,3,5)

1 =M_j , the maxterm with subscript j is a complement of the minterm with the same subscript j and vice versa. To convert one canonical form to another, interchange the symbol ∑ and π, and list those numbers missing from the original form.

Computation of total gate inputs:

The total number of gate inputs required to realize a Boolean expression is computed as, If the expression is in the SOP form, count the number of AND inputs and number of AND gates feeding the OR gate. If the expression is in the POS form, count the number of OR inputs and the number of OR gates feeding the AND gate. If it is in hybrid form, count the gate inputs and the gates feeding other gates. The cost of implementing circuit is proportional to no. of gate inputs required.

EX: ABC+A CD +E +AD

1. Count the AND Inputs 3+4+2+2=11
2. Count AND gates feeding the OR gate 1+1+1+1=4
3. Total gate inputs =15

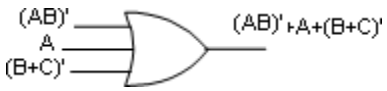
Boolean Expression & Logic Diagrams:

Boolean expressions can be realized as hardware using logic gates. Conversely, hardware can be translated into Boolean expressions for the analysis of existing circuits.

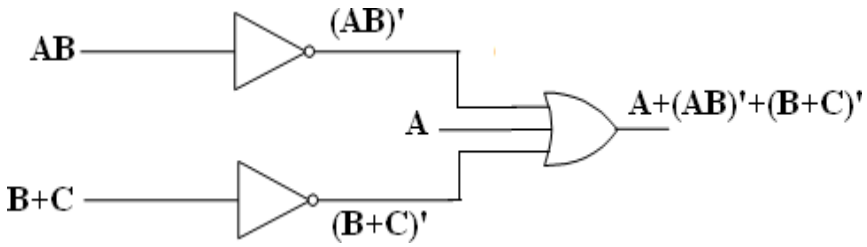
1. Converting Boolean Expressions to Logic:

To convert, start with the output & work towards the input.

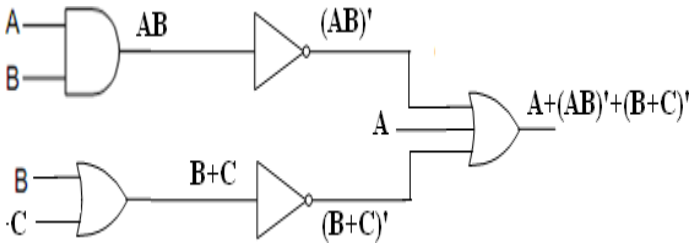
Assume the expression +A+ + is to be realized using AOI logic. Start with this expression. Since it is three terms, it must be the output of a three-input OR gates. So, draw an OR gate with three inputs as



(AB)‘ is the output of an inverter whose inputs is AB and (B+C)‘ must be the output of an inverter whose input is B+C. so, those two inverters are as



Now AB must be output of a two-input AND gate whose inputs are A and B . And B+C must be the output of a two-input OR gate whose inputs are B and C. so, an AND gate and an OR gate are as

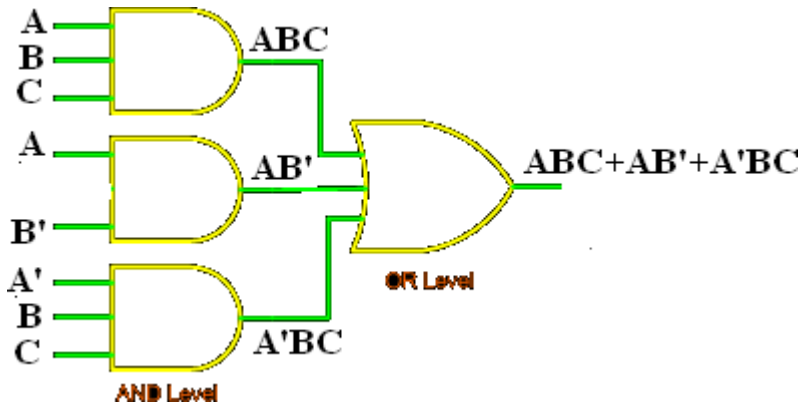


2. Converting Logic to Boolean Expressions:

To convert logic to algebra, start with the input signals and develop the terms of the Boolean expression until the output is reached.

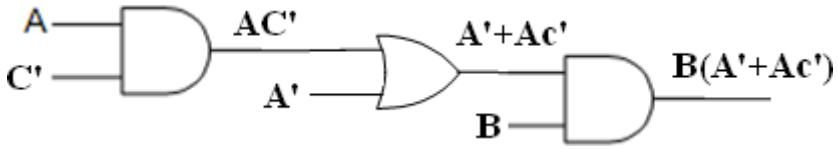
Converting AND/OR/INVERT logic to NAND/NOR logic:

1. The SOP expression ABC+AB‘+A‘BC can be implemented in AND/ OR logic as



The POS expression (A+B+C)(A+B‘)(A‘+B+C) can be implemented usin OR and AND gates

The expression ABC‘+A‘B[=B(A‘+AC‘) can be implemented in hybrid form as



Hybrid Logic reduces the no. of gate inputs required for realization (from 7 to 6 in this case), but results in multilevel logic. Different inputs pass through number of gates to reach the output. It leads to non-uniform propagation delay between different numbers of gates to give rise to logic race. The SOP and POS realizations give rise two-level logic. The two-level logic provides uniform time delay between input and outputs, because each input signal has to pass through two gates to reach the output. So, it does not suffer from the problem of logic race.

Since NAND logic and MOR logic are universal logic circuits which are first computed and converted to AOI logic may ten be converted to either NAND logic or NOR logic depending on the choice. The procedure is

1. Draw the circuit in AOI logic
2. If NAND hardware is chosen, add a circle at the output of each AND gate and at the inputs to all the AND gates.
3. If NOR hardware is chosen, add a circle at the output of each OR gate and at the inputs to all the AND gates
4. Add or subtract an inverter on each line that received a circle in steps 2 or 3 so that the polarity of signals on those lines remains unchanged from that of the originaldiagram
5. Replace bubbled OR by NAND and bubbled AND by NOR
6. Eliminate double inversions.

LOGIC GATES: Logic gates are fundamental building blocks of digital systems. Logic gate produces one output level when some combinations of input levels are present. & a different output level when other combination of input levels is present. In this, 3 basic types of gates are there. AND OR & NOT

The interconnection of gates to perform a variety of logical operation is called *Logic Design*. Inputs & outputs of logic gates can occur only in two levels.1,0 or High, Low or True , False or On , Off. A table which lists all the possible combinations of input variables & the corresponding outputs is called a Truth Table. It shows how the logic circuits output responds to various combinations of logic levels at the inputs. *Level Logic*, a logic in which the voltage levels represent logic 1 & logic 0.Level logic may be Positive Logic or Negative Logic. In *Positive Logic* the higher of two voltage levels represent logic 1 & Lower of two voltage levels represent logic 0.In *Negative Logic* the lower of two voltage levels represent logic 1 & higher of two voltage levels represent logic 0.

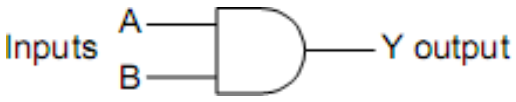
In TTl (Transistor-Transistor Logic) Logic family voltage levels are +5v, 0v.Logic 1 represent +5v & Logic 0 represent 0v.

AND Gate:

It is represented by _.'(dot) It has two or more inputs but only one output. The output assume the logic 1 state only when each one of its inputs is at logic 1 state . The output assumes the logic 0 state even if one of its inputs is at logic 0 state. The AND gate is also called an All or Nothing gate.

Boolean Expression: $A.B = Y$

A and B



A	B	Y
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

Logic Symbol

Truth Table

IC 7408 contains 4 two input AND gates
IC 7411 contains 3 three input AND gates
IC 7421 contains 2 four input AND gates

OR Gate:

It is represented by _+‘ (plus) It has two or more inputs but only one output. The output assumes the logic 1 state only when one of its inputs is at logic 1 state. The output assumes the logic 0 state even if each one of its inputs is at logic 0 state. TheOR gate is also called an any or All gate. Also called an inclusive OR gate because it includes the condition both the inputs can be present.

Logic Symbol

A	B	Y
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

Truth Table

Boolean Expression:

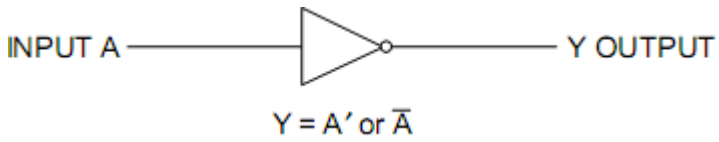
A OR B
A + B = Y

IC 7432 Contains 4 two input OR gates.

NOT Gate:

It is represented by _-—(bar).It is also called an *Inverter or Buffer*. It has only one input & one output. Whose output always the compliment of its input? Theoutput assumes logic 1 when input is logic 0 & output assume logic 0 when input is logic 1.

Logic Symbol



Truth Table

A	X
1	0
0	1

Boolean Expression:

X=A‘

Logic circuits of any complexity can be realized using only AND, OR , NOT gates. Using these 3 called AND-OR-INVERT i.e, AOI Logic circuits.

The Universal Gates:

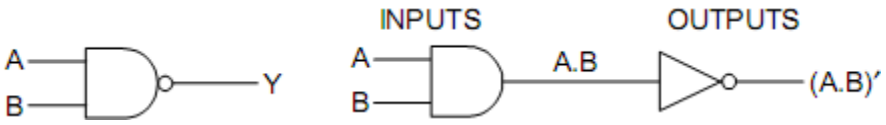
The universal gates are NAND, NOR. Each of which can also realize Logic Circuits Single handedly. NAND-NOR called Universal Building Blocks.. Both NAND-NOR can perform all the three basic logic functions. AOI logic can be converted to NAND logic or NOR logic.

NAND Gate:

NAND gate mean NOT AND i.e, AND output is NOTed.
NAND→AND & NOT gates

Boolean Expression:
Y=
= A .B.C whole bar.

NAND assumes Logic 0 when each of inputs assume logic 1.



Logic Symbol

A	B	Y
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

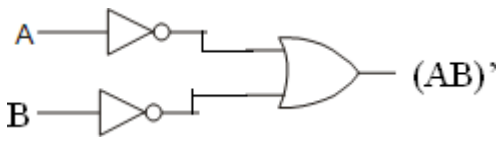
Truth table

Bubbled OR gate: The output of this is same as NAND gate.

Bubbled OR gate is OR gate with inverted inputs.

Y=A‘+B‘=(AB)‘

A	B	Y
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

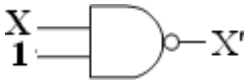


Truth Table Logic Symbol

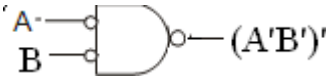
- NAND gate as an Inverter.

  All its input terminals together & applying the signal to be inverted to the common terminal by connecting all input terminals except one to logic 1 & applying the signal to be inverted to the remainingterminal.

  It is also called Controlled Inverter.



Bubbled NAND Gate:

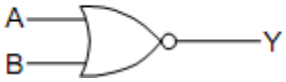


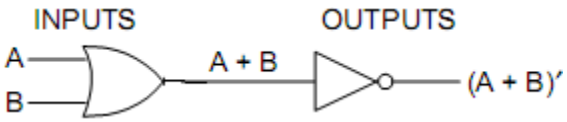
NOR Gate:

NOR gate is NOT gate with OR gate. i.e, OR gate is NOTed.

Boolean expression:

X= + + + − −





Logic Symbol Logic symbol with OR and NOT

A	B	Y
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0

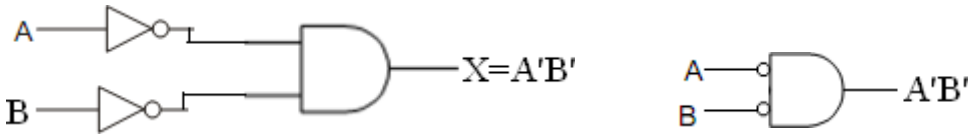
Truth Table

Bubbled AND gate:

is AND gate with inverted inputs.The AND gate with inverted inputs is called a bubbled And gate. So a NOR gate is equivalent to a bubbled and gate.A bubbled AND gate is also called a negative AND gate. Since its output assumes the HIGH state only when all its

inputs are in LOW state , a NOR gate is also called active-LOW AND gate.Output Y is 1 only when both A & B are equal to 0.i.e, only when both A‘ and B‘ are equal to 1.

NOR can also realized by first inverting the inputs and ANDing those inverted inputs.

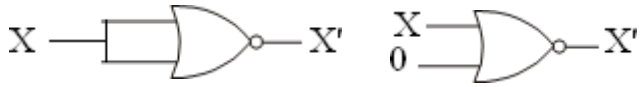


Logic Symbol

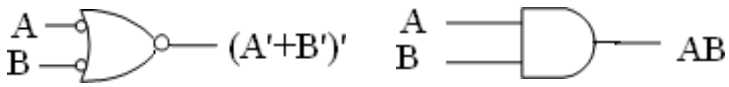
Inputs A B	Inverted Inputs A‘ B‘	Output Y
0 0	1 1	1
0 1	1 0	0
1 0	0 1	0
1 1	0 0	0

NOR gate as an inverter:

is tying all input terminals together & applying the signal to be inverted to the common terminals or all inputs set as logic 0 except one & applying signal to be inverted to the remaining terminal.



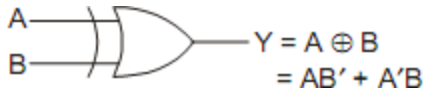
Bubbled NOR Gate: is AND gate.



IC 7402 is 4 two input NOR gate
IC 7427 is 3 three input NOR gate
IC 7425 is 2 four input NOR gate

The Exclusive OR (X-OR) gate:

It has 2 inputs& only 1 output. It assumes output as 1 when input is not equal called *anti-coincidence gate or inequality detector.*



Logic Symbol

A	B	A ⊕ B
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

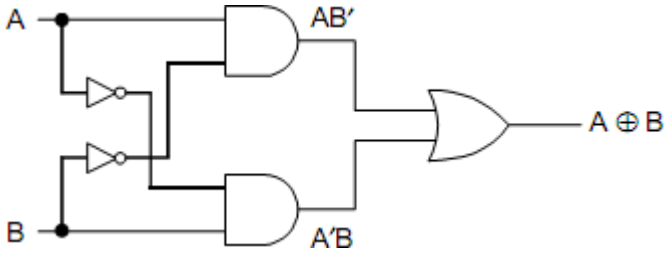
Truth Table

Proof:

$$Y = (A \oplus B) \oplus C$$
$$= (AB' + A'B) \oplus C$$
$$X = AB' + A'B$$

The high outputs are generated only when odd number of high inputs is present. This is why x-or function also known as odd *function.*

The X-OR gate using AND-OR-NOT gates:



X-OR gate as an Inverter:

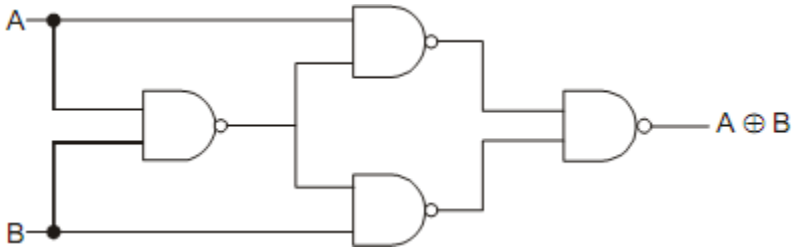
By connecting one of two input terminals to logic 1 & feeding the sequence to be inverted to other terminal

Logic Symbol

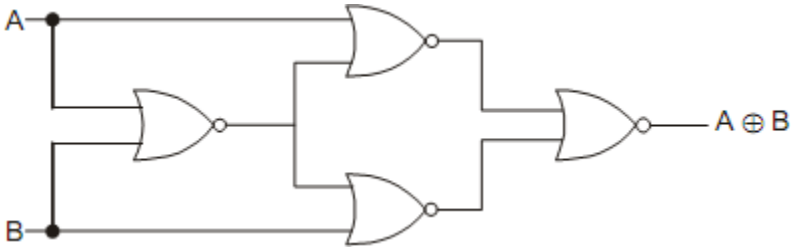
TTL IC 746 has 4 x-OR gate

CMOS IC 74C8C has 4 X-OR gates.

X-OR gate using NAND gates only:



X-OR gate using NOR gates only:



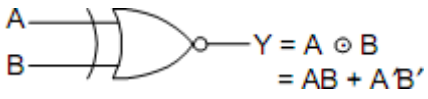
The EX-NOR Gate:

It is X-OR gate with a NOT gate.It has two inputs & one output logic circuit. It assumes output as 0 when one if inputs are 0 & other 1.It can be used as an equality detector because it outputs a 1 only when its inputs are equal.

$$X=A \odot B=AB+A'B'=\overline{A \oplus B}=(AB'+A'B)'$$

$$\begin{aligned} A \odot B &= (A \oplus B)' \\ &= (AB' + A'B)' \\ &= (A' + B) \,.\, (A + B') \\ &= AA' + A'B' + AB + BB' \\ &= AB + A'B'. \end{aligned}$$

Proof:

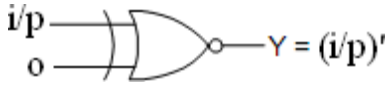


Logic Symbol.

Inputs A B	Output X= A ⊙ B
0 0	1
0 1	0
1 0	0
1 0	1

X-NOR gate as an inverter:

by connecting one of 2 input terminals to logic 0 & feeding the input sequence to be inverted to the other terminal.



Logic Symbol as an inverter

i/p 0	o/p 0 ⊙
i/p 1	0/p 1 ⊙

It can be used as Controlled inverter.

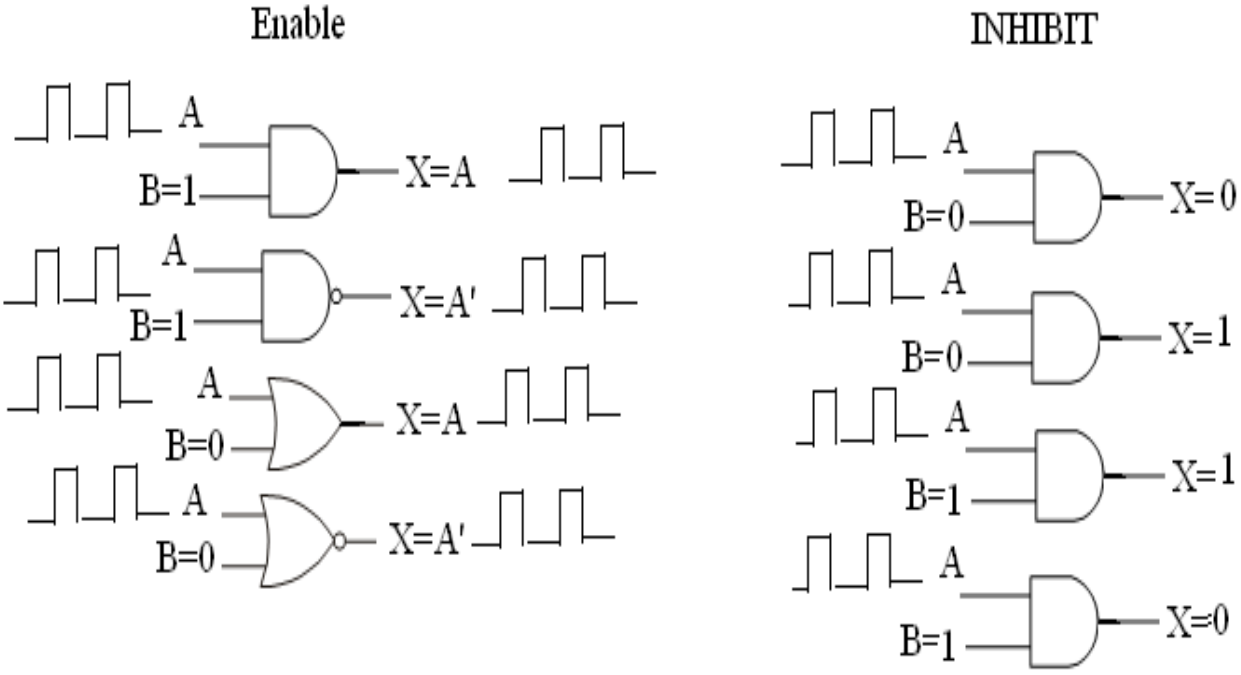
$A \odot B=(A \oplus B)'$ is compliment of X-OR

$A \odot B \odot C=(A \oplus B \oplus C)'$

TTl IC74LS266 contain 4 each X-NOR gates.
CMOS 74C266 contain 4 each X-NOR gates.
Highspeed CMOS IC 74HC266 contain 4 each X-NOR gates.

INHIBIT CIRCUITS:

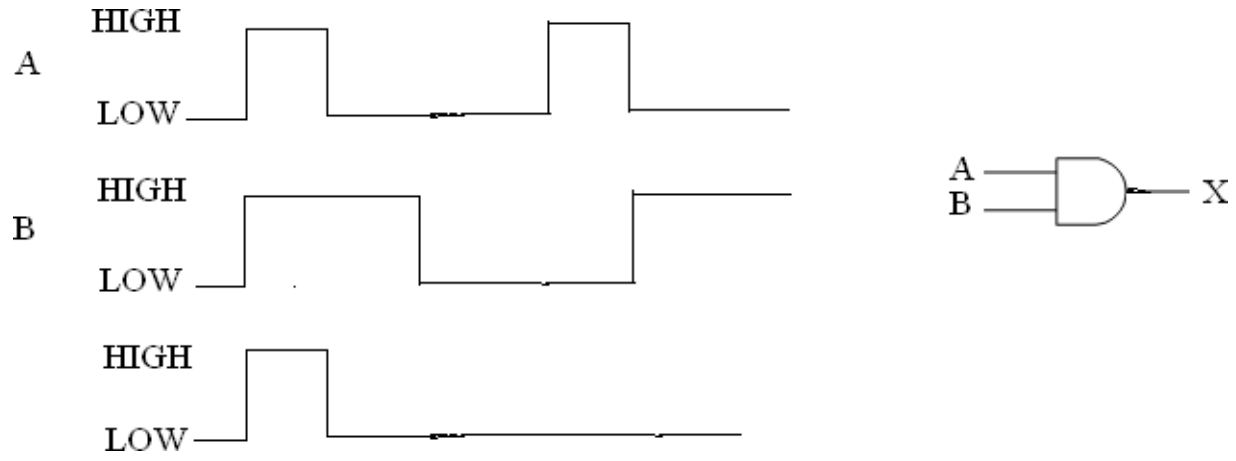
AND , OR , NAND , NOR gates can be used to control the passage of an input logic signal through the output.



Pulsed operation of Logic gates:

The inputs to a gate are not stationary levels , but are voltages that change frequently between two logic levels & can be classified as pulse waveform.

EX:AND



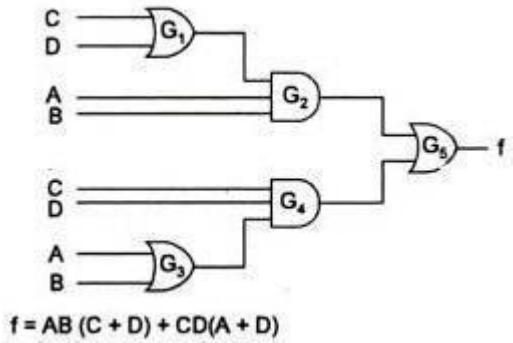
Hybrid Logic:

Both SOP & POS reductions result in a logic circuit in which each input signal has to pass through two gates to reach the output called Two-level logic. It has the advantage of providing uniform time delay between input signals & the output. The disadvantage is that the minimal or POS reductions may not be the actual minimal.

Actual minimal obtained by manipulating the minimal SOP & POS forms into a hybrid form.

EX: ABC+ABD+ACD+BCD (SOP) has 16 inputs

AB(C+D)+CD(A+B) ----has 12 inputs.



The C input to the OR gate must go through 3 levels of logic before reaching the output where as C input to the AND gate must only go through two levels, can result critical timing problem called *Logic Race.*

Implementation of Logic functions:

Two level implementation:

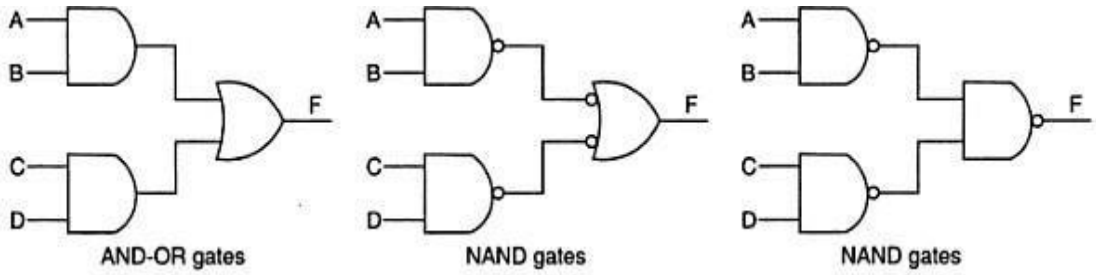
The implementation of a logic expression such that each one of the inputs has to pass through only two gates to reach the output is called Two-level implementation.

- Both SOP , POS forms result in two-level logic
- Two level implementation can be with AND, OR gates or only NAND or with only NOR gates
- Boolean expression with only NAND gates requires that the function be in SOP form.

Function F= AB+CD

(A) AND-OR logic
(B) NAND-NAND logic

F=AB+CD= + = .



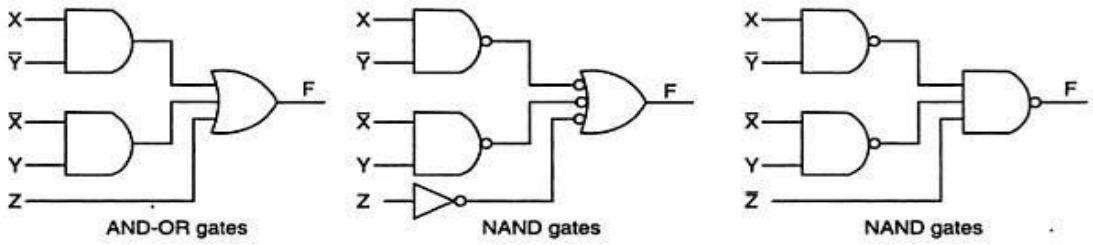
AND-OR Logic NAND Logic

Two –level implementation using AND-OR and NAND logic

The implementation of the form:

F=XY‘+X‘Y+Z using AND-OR logic and NAND- NAND logic is

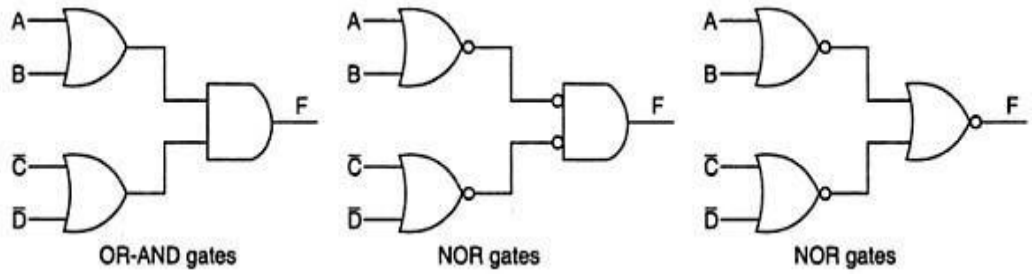
$$F = X\bar{Y} + \bar{X}Y + Z = \overline{\overline{X\bar{Y} + \bar{X}Y + Z}} = \overline{\overline{X\bar{Y}} \cdot \overline{\bar{X}Y} \cdot \overline{Z}}$$



Two –level implementation using AND-OR and NAND logic

The implementation of Boolean expressions with only NOR gates requires that the function be in the form of POS form.

Implementation of the function (A+B)(C‘+D‘)

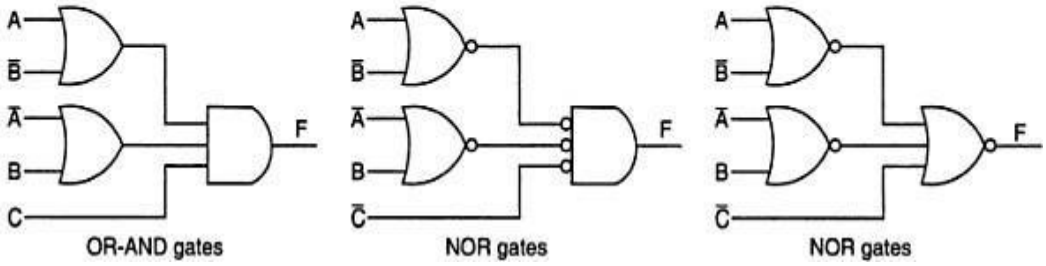


Two –level implementation using OR-AND and NOR logic

The implementation of the function

$$F = (A + \bar{B})(\bar{A} + B)C$$

with (a) OR-AND logic and (b) NOR logic is shown in Figure 6.68.



Two –level implementation using OR-AND and NOR logic

Other two level implementations:

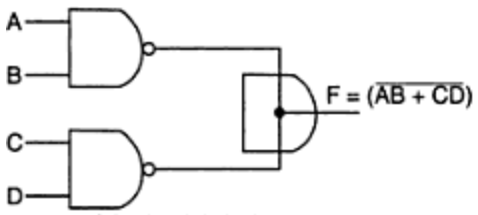
The types of gates most often found in IC‘s are NAND and NOR

Some NAND or NOR gates allow the possibility of wire connection between the outputs of two gates to provide a specific logic function called Wired Logic.

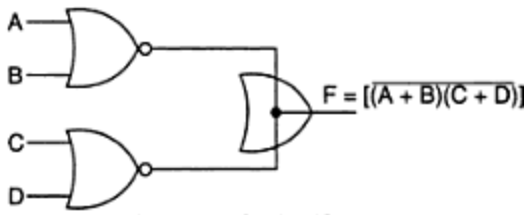
The logic function implemented by the circuit

$$F = (\overline{AB}) \cdot (\overline{CD}) = \overline{(AB + CD)}$$

Is calledan AND-OR Invert function.



(a) Wired-AND in open-collector TTL NAND gates (AND-OR-INVERT)



(b) Wired-OR in ECL gates (OR-AND-INVERT)

Similarly NOR outputs of ECL gates can be tied together to form Wired NOR function.

The logic function implemented by this circuit is

$$F = (\overline{A + B}) + (\overline{C + D}) = [\overline{(A + B)(C + D)}]$$

Is called OR-AND INVERT Function.

EX: Open Collector TTL NAND gates, when tied together perform the wired AND logic is called AOI

=( ) .( )

= +

Similarly NOR outputs of ECL can tied together to perform a wired NOR function.

F=(+)+(+)

=[(+)(+)]

Non Degenerate forms:

Considering 4 types of gates AND, OR, NAND , NOR & assign one type of gate for the first level & one type of gate for the second level. Find 16 possible combinations of two level form. Eight of these are degenerate forms. Because they generate to a single operation. i.e, AND gate in first level & AND gate in second The output is nearly the AND function of all input variables.

The other non degenerate forms produce an implementation in SOP or POS are

AND-OR	OR-AND
NAND-NAND	NOR-NOR
NOR-OR	NAND-NAND
OR-NAND	AND-NOR

The two forms are dual of each other.

AND-OR & OR-AND forms are the basic two-level forms.

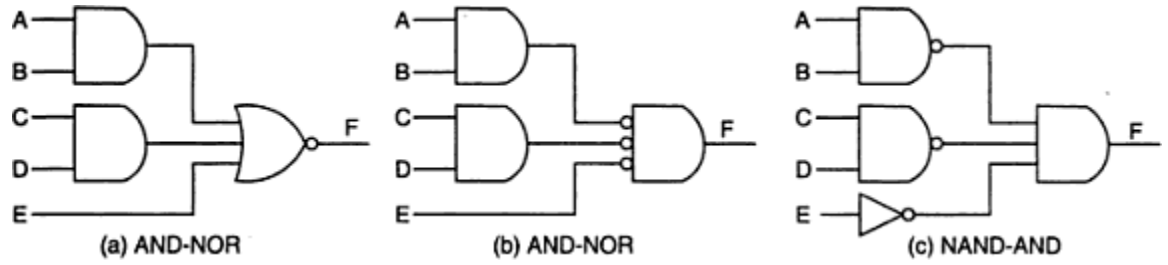
NAND-NAND, NOR_NOR

AOI Implementation:

The two forms Nandi-And and And-Nor perform AOI function.

Inversion isand-Nor form resembles the and-Or form done by the bubble in the output of the NOR gate.

Its function is F= + +



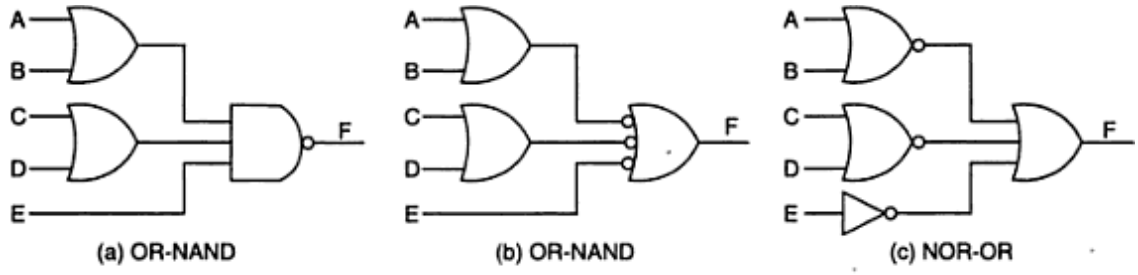
Two-level implementation in AND-NOR and NAND-AND form

OAI Implementation:

The twoforms OR-NAND and NOR-NOR perform OAI function.

OR-NAND form OR-AND form except inversion done by bubble in NAND gate.

Function F=[(+)(+)]



Two-level implementation in OR-NAND form and NOR-OR form.

Summary:

Equivalent nondegenerate form		Implements the function	Simplify $\overline{F}$ in	To get an output of
(a)	(b)*			
AND-NOR	NAND-AND	AND-OR-INVERT	Sum of products by combining 0s in the map	F
OR-NAND	NOR-OR	OR-AND-INVERT	Product of sums by combining 1s in the map and then complementing	F

Simplification of Boolean functions

Karnaughmap

Two-variable k-map:

A two-variable k-map can have 2^2=4 possible combinations of the input variables A and B Each of these combinations, , B,A ,AB(in the SOP form) is called a minterm. The minterm may be represented in terms of their decimal designations – m0 for , m1 for B,m2 for A and m3 for AB, assuming that A represents the MSB. The letter m stands for minterm and the subscript represents the decimal designation of the minterm. The presence or absence of a minterm in the expression indicates that the output of the logic circuit assumes logic 1 or logic 0 level for that combination of input variables.

The expression f= ,+ B+A +AB , it can be expressed using min term

as F= m0+m2+m3=∑m(0,2,3)

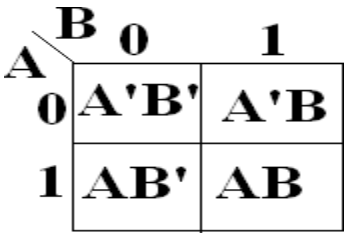
Using Truth Table:

Minterm	Inputs A	B	Output F
0	0	0	1
1	0	1	0
2	1	0	1
3	1	1	1

A 1 in the output contains that particular minterm in its sum and a 0 in that column indicates that the particular mintermdoes not appear in the expression for output . this information can also be indicated by a two-variable k-map.

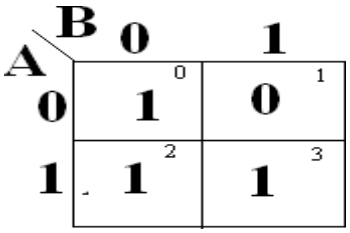
Mapping of SOP Expresions:

A two-variable k-map has 22=4 squares .These squares are called cells. Each square on the k-map represents a unique minterm. The minterm designation of the squares are placed in any square, indicates that the corresponding minterm does output expressions. And a 0 or no entry in any square indicates that the corresponding minterm does not appear in the expression for output.



The minterms of a two-variable k-map

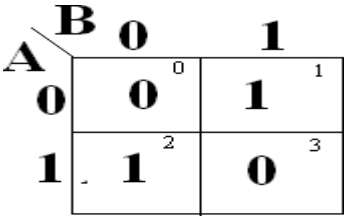
The mapping of the expressions =∑m(0,2,3)is



k-map of ∑m(0,2,3)

EX: Map the expressions f= B+A

F= $m_1+m_{2=}$∑m(1,2)The k-map is



Minimizations of SOP expressions:

To minimize Boolean expressions given in the SOP form by using the k-map, look for adjacent adjacent squares having 1‘s minterms adjacent to each other, and combine them to form larger squares to eliminate some variables. Two squares are said to be adjacent to each other, if their minterms differ in only one variable. (i.e, B & A differ only in one variable. so they may be combined to form a 2-square to eliminate the variable B.similarly all other.

The necessary condition for adjacency of minterms is that their decimal designations must differ by a power of 2. A minterm can be combined with any number of minterms adjacent to it to form larger squares. Two minterms which are adjacent to each other can be combined to form a bigger square called a 2-square or a pair. This eliminates one variable – the variable that is not common to both the minterms. For EX:

m0 and m1 can be combined to yield,

f_1 = m0+m1= + B= (B+

)= m0 and m2 can be combined to yield,

f_2 = m0+m2= + = (+)=

m1 and m3 can be combined to yield,

f_3= m1+m3= B+AB=B(+)=B

m2 and m3 can be combined to yield,

f_4 = m2+m3=A +AB=A(B+)=A

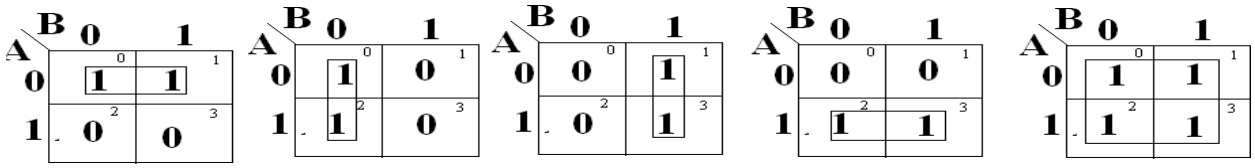
m_0 ,m_1 ,m_2 and m_3 can be combined to yield,

= + +A +AB

= (B+) +A(B+)

= +A

=1

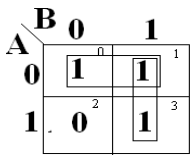


f1= f2= f3=B f4=A f5=1

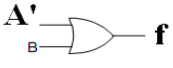
The possible minterm groupings in a two-variable k-map.

Two 2-squares adjacent to each other can be combined to form a 4-square. A 4-square eliminates 2 variables. A 4-square is called a quad. To read the squares on the map after minimization, consider only those variables which remain constant through the square, and ignore the variables which are varying. Write the non complemented variable if the variable is remaining constant as a 1, and the complemented variable if the variable is remaining constant as a 0, and write the variables as a product term. In the above figure f_1 read as , because, along the square , A remains constant as a 0, that is , as , where as B is changing from 0 to 1.

EX: Reduce the minterm f= +A +AB using mapping Expressed in terms of minterms, the given expression is F=m_0+m_1+m_2+ m_3=m∑(0,1,3)& the figure shows the k-map for f and its reduction . In one 2-square, A is constant as a 0 but B varies from a 0 to a 1, and in the other 2- square, B is constant as a 1 but A varies from a 0 to a 1. So, the reduced expressions is +B.



=



It requires two gate inputs for realization as

f= +B (k-map in SOP form, and logic diagram.)

The main criterion in the design of a digital circuit is that its cost should be as low as possible. For that the expression used to realize that circuit must be minimal.Since the cost is proportional to number of gate inputs in the circuit in the circuit, an expression is considered minimal only if it corresponds to the least possible number of gate inputs. & there is no guarantee for that k-map in SOP is the real minimal. To obtain real minimal expression, obtain the minimal expression both in SOP & POS form form by using k-maps and take the minimal of these two minimals.

The 1‘s on the k-map indicate the presence of minterms in the output expressions, where as the 0s indicate the absence of minterms .Since the absence of a minterm in the SOP expression means the presense of the corresponding maxterm in the POS expression of the same .when a SOP expression is plotted on the k-map, 0s or no entries on the k-map represent the maxterms. To obtain the minimal expression in the POS form, consider the 0s on the k-map and follow the procedure used for combining 1s. Also, since the absence of a maxterm in the POS expression means the presence of the corresponding minterm in the SOP expression of the same , when a POS expression is plotted on the k-map, 1s or no entries on the k-map represent the minterms.

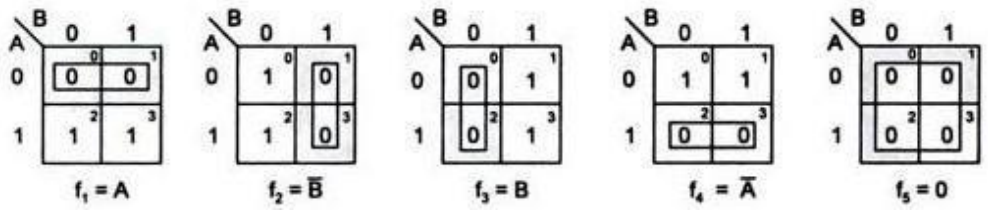
Mapping of POS expressions:

Each sum term in the standard POS expression is called a maxterm. A function in two variables (A, B) has four possible maxterms, A+B,A+ , +B, +

. They are represented as M_0, M_1, M2, and M3respectively. The uppercase letter M stands for maxterm and its subscript denotes the decimal designation of that maxterm obtained by treating the non-complemented variable as a 0 and the complemented variable as a 1 and putting them side by side for reading the decimal equivalent of the binary number so formed.

For mapping a POS expression on to the k-map, 0s are placed in the squares corresponding to the maxterms which are presented in the expression an d1s are placed in the squares corresponding to the maxterm which are not present in the expression. The decimal designation of the squares of the squares for maxterms is the same as that for the minterms. A two-variable k-map & the associated maxterms are asthe maxterms of a two-variable k-map

The possible maxterm groupings in a two-variable k-map



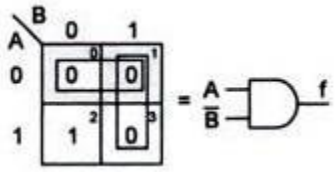
Minimization of POS Expressions:

To obtain the minimal expression in POS form, map the given POS expression on to the K-map and combine the adjacent 0s into as large squares as possible. Read the squares putting the complemented variable if its value remains constant as a 1 and the non-complemented variable if its value remains constant as a 0 along the entire square (ignoring the variables which do not remain constant throughout the square) and then write them as a sum term.

Various maxterm combinations and the corresponding reduced expressions are shown in figure. In this f_1 read as A because A remains constant as a 0 throughout the square and B changes from a 0 to a 1. f_2 is read as B‘ because B remains constant along the square as a 1 and A changes from a 0 to a 1. f_5
Is read as a 0 because both the variables are changing along the square.

Ex: Reduce the expression f=(A+B)(A+B‘)(A‘+B‘) using mapping.

The given expression in terms of maxterms is f=πM(0,1,3). It requires two gates inputs for realization of the reduced expression as



F=AB‘

K-map in POS form and logic diagram

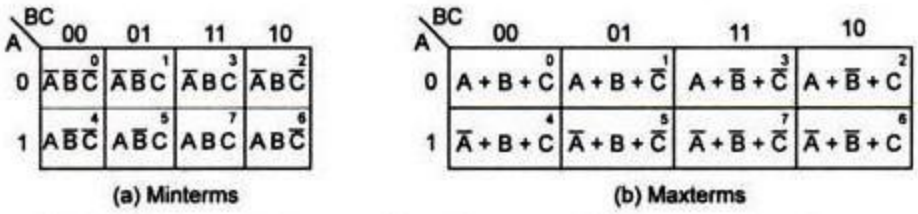
In this given expression ,the maxterm M_2 is absent. This is indicated by a 1 on the k-map. The corresponding SOP expression is $\sum m_2$ or AB‘. This realization is the same as that for the POS form.

Three-variable K-map:

A function in three variables (A, B, C) expressed in the standard SOP form can have eight possible combinations: A B C , AB C,A BC ,A BC,AB C ,AB C,ABC , and ABC. Each one of these combinations designate d by m0,m1,m2,m3,m4,m5,m6, and m7, respectively, is called a minterm. A is the MSB of the minterm designator and C is the LSB.

In the standard POS form, the eight possible combinations are:A+B+C, A+B+C , A+B +C,A+B + C ,A + B+ C,A + B + C ,A + B + C,A + B + C . Each oneof these combinations designated by M_0, M1, M2, M3, M4, M5, M6, and M7respectively is called a maxterm. A is the MSB of the maxterm designator and C is the LSB.

A three-variable k-map has, therefore, 8(=2^3) squares or cells, and each square on the map represents a minterm or maxterm as shown in figure. The small number on the top right corner of each cell indicates the minterm or maxterm designation.



The three-variable k-map.

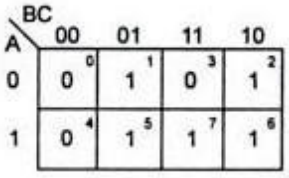
The binary numbers along the top of the map indicate the condition of B and C for each column. The binary number along the left side of the map against each row indicates the condition of A for that row. For example, the binary number 01 on top of the second column in fig indicates that the variable B appears in complemented form and the variable C in non- complemented form in all the minterms in that column. The binary number 0 on the left of the first row indicates that the variable A appears in complemented form in all the minterms in that row, the binary numbers along the top of the k-map are not in normal binary order. They are, infact, in the Gray code. This is to ensure that twophysically adjacent squares are really adjacent, i.e., their minterms or maxterms differ by only one variable.

Ex: Map the expression f=: C+ + + +ABC

In the given expression , the minterms are : C=001=m_1 ; =101=m_5; =010=m_2;

=110=m_6;ABC=111=m_7.

So the expression is f=∑m(1,5,2,6,7)= ∑m(1,2,5,6,7). The corresponding k-map is

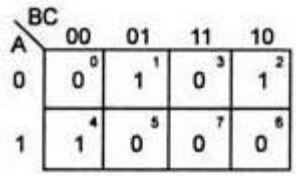


K-map in SOP form

Ex: Map the expression f= (A+B+C),(+ +) (+ +)(A + +)(+ +)

In the given expression the maxterms are :A+B+C=000=M_0; + + =101=M_5; + + = 111=M_7; A + + =011=M_3; + + =110=M_6.

So the expression is f = π M (0,5,7,3,6)= π M (0,3,5,6,7). The mapping of the expression is



K-map in POS form.

Minimization of SOP and POS expressions:

For reducing the Boolean expressions in SOP (POS) form plotted on the k-map, look at the 1s (0s) present on the map. These represent the minterms (maxterms). Look for the minterms (maxterms) adjacent to each other, in order to combine them into larger squares. Combining of adjacent squares in a k-map containing 1s (or 0s) for the purpose of simplification of a SOP (or POS)expression is called *looping*. Some of the minterms (maxterms) may have many adjacencies. Always start with the minterms (maxterm) with the least number of adjacencies and try to form as large as large a square as possible. The larger must form a geometric square or rectangle. They can be formed even by wrapping around, but cannot be formed by using diagonal configurations. Next consider the minterm (maxterm) with next to the least number of adjacencies and form as large a square as possible. Continue this till all the minterms (maxterms) are taken care of . A minterm (maxterm) can be part of any number of squares if it is helpful in reduction. Read the minimal expression from the k-map, corresponding to the squares formed. There can be more than one minimal expression.

Two squares are said to be adjacent to each other (since the binary designations along the top of the map and those along the left side of the map are in Gray code), if they are physically adjacent to each other, or can be made adjacent to each other by wrapping around. For squares to be combinable into bigger squares it is essential but not sufficient that their minterm designations must differ by a power of two.

General procedure to simplify the Boolean expressions:

1. Plot the k-map and place 1s(0s) corresponding to the minterms (maxterms) of the SOP (POS) expression.
2. Check the k-map for 1s(0s) which are not adjacent to any other 1(0). They are isolated minterms(maxterms) . They are to be read as they are because they cannot be combined even into a 2-square.
3. Check for those 1s(0S) which are adjacent to only one other 1(0) and make them pairs (2 squares).
4. Check for quads (4 squares) and octets (8 squares) of adjacent 1s (0s) even if they contain some 1s(0s) which have already been combined. They must geometrically form a square or a rectangle.
5. Check for any 1s(0s) that have not been combined yet and combine them into bigger squares if possible.
6. Form the minimal expression by summing (multiplying) the product the product (sum) terms of all the groups.

Reading the K-maps:

While reading the reduced k-map in SOP (POS) form, the variable which remains constant as 0 along the square is written as the complemented (non-complemented) variable and the one which remains constant as 1 along the square is written as non-complemented (complemented) variable and the term as a product (sum) term. All the product (sum) terms are added (multiplied).

Some possible combinations of minterms and the corresponding minimal expressions readfrom the k-maps are shown in fig: Here f_6 is read as 1, because along the 8-square no variable remains constant. F_5 is read as , because, along the 4-square formed by0,m_1,m_2 and m_3 , the variables B and C are changing, and A remains constant as a 0. Algebraically,

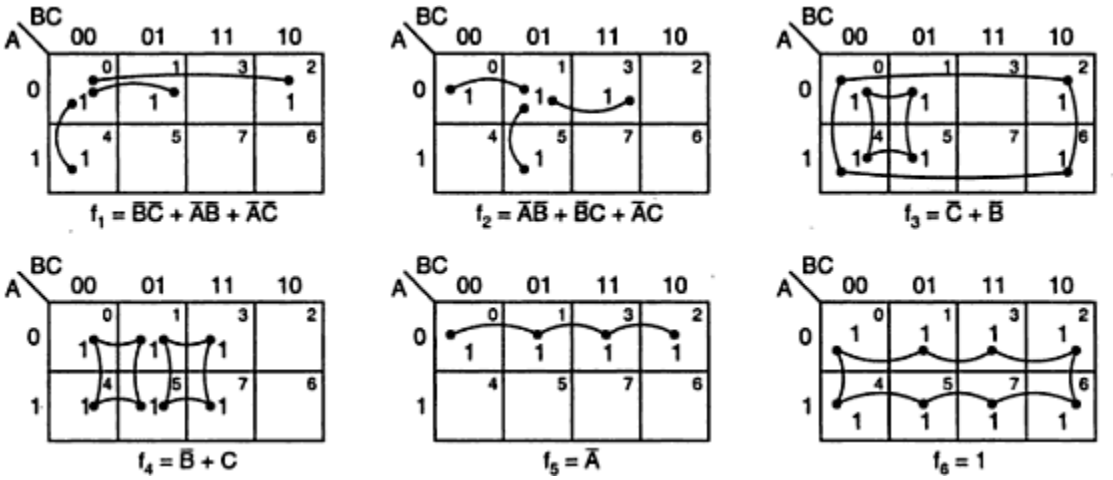
$f_5 = m_0+m_1+m_2+m_3$

$=$ $+$ $C+$ $+$

$= (\ +C)+ B(C+\ )$

$=$ $+$ B

$=$ ($+B)=$

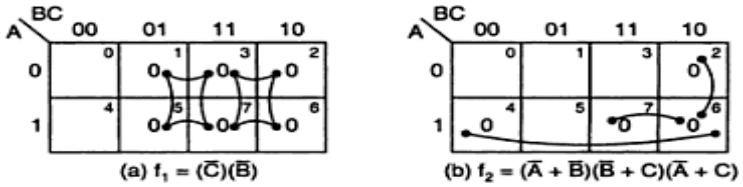


f_3 is read as $+$, because in the 4-square formed by m0,m2,m6, and m4, the variable A and B are changing , where as the variable C remains constant as a 0. So it is read as . In the 4-square formed by m_0, m1, m4, m_5, A and C are changing but B remains constant as a 0. So it is read as . So, the resultant expression for f_3 is the sum of these two, i.e., $+$.

f_1 is read as $+$ $+$,because in the 2-square formed by m_0 and m_4 , A is changing from a0 to a 1. Whereas B and C remain constant as a 0. So it s read as . In the 2-square formed by m_0 and m_1, C is changing from a 0 to a 1, whereas A and B remain constant as a 0. So it is read as .In the 2-square formed by m_0 and m_2 , B is changing from a 0 to a 1 whereas A and C remain constant as a 0. So, it is read as . Therefore, the resultant SOP expression is

$+ +$

Some possible maxterm groupings and the corresponding minimal POS expressions read from the k-map are

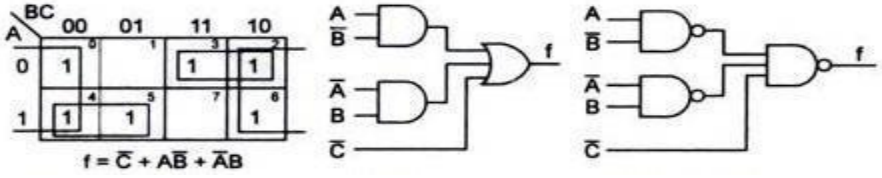


In this figure, along the 4-square formed by M_1, M3, M7, M5, A and B are changing from a 0 to a 1, where as C remains constant as a 1. SO it is read as . Along the 4-squad formed by M_3, M2, M7, and M_6, variables A and C are changing from a 0 to a 1. But B remains constant as a 1. So it is read as . The minimal expression is the product of these two terms , i.e., f_1 = ( )( ).also in this figure, along the 2-square formed by M_4 and M_6 , variable B is changing from a 0 to a 1, while variable A remains constant as a 1 and variable C remains constant as a 0. SO, read it as +C. Similarly, the 2-square formed by M_7 andM_6 is read as + , while the 2-square formed by M_2 and M_6 is read as +C. The minimal expression is the product of these sum terms, i.e, f_2 =(+)+(+)+(+C)

Ex:Reduce the expression f=∑m(0,2,3,4,5,6) using mapping and implement it in AOI logic as well as in NAND logic.The Sop k-map and its reduction , and the implementation of the minimal expression using AOI logic and the corresponding NAND logic are shown in figures below

In SOP k-map, the reduction is done as:

1. m_5 has only one adjacency m_4 , so combine m_5 and m_4 into a square. Along this 2-square A remains constant as 1 and B remains constant as 0 but C varies from 0 to 1. So read it as A .
2. m_3 has only one adjacency m_2 , so combine m_3 and m_2 into a square. Along this 2-square A remains constant as 0 and B remains constant as 1 but C varies from 1 to 0. So read it as B.
3. m_6 can form a 2-square with m_2 and m_4 can form a 2-square with m_0, but observe that by wrapping the map from left to right m_0, m_4 ,m_2 ,m_6 can form a 4-square. Out of these m_2 andm_4 have already been combined but they can be utilized again. So make it. Along this 4-square, A is changing from 0 to 1 and B is also changing from 0 to 1 but C is remaining constant as 0. so read it as .
4. Write all the product terms in SOP form. So the minimal SOP expression is



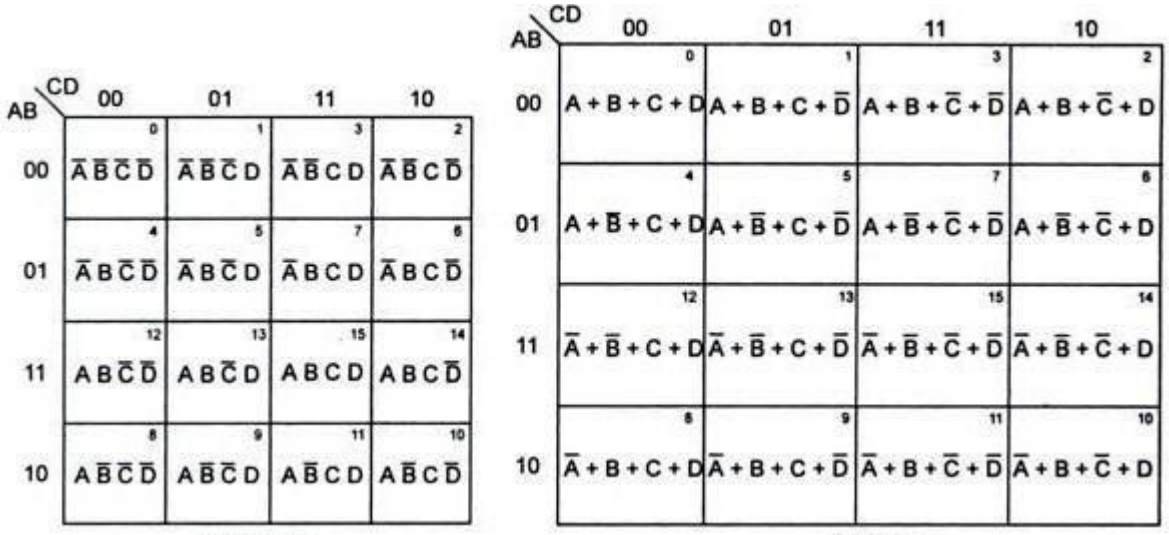
f_{min}=

k-map **AOI logic** **NAND logic**

Four variable k-maps:

Four variable k-map expressions can have 2^4=16 possible combinations of input variables such as , ,----------ABCD with minterm designations m_0,m_1 ----------m_{15} respectively in SOP form & A+B+C+D, A+B+C+ ,---------- + + + with maxterms M_0,M_1, ---------

-M_{15} respectively in POS form. It has 2^4=16 squares or cells.The binary number designations of rows & columns are in the gray code. Here follows 01 & 10 follows 11 called Adjacency ordering.



AB \ CD	00	01	11	10
00	0 $\bar{A}\bar{B}\bar{C}\bar{D}$	1 $\bar{A}\bar{B}\bar{C}D$	3 $\bar{A}\bar{B}CD$	2 $\bar{A}\bar{B}C\bar{D}$
01	4 $\bar{A}B\bar{C}\bar{D}$	5 $\bar{A}B\bar{C}D$	7 $\bar{A}BCD$	6 $\bar{A}BC\bar{D}$
11	12 $AB\bar{C}\bar{D}$	13 $AB\bar{C}D$	15 $ABCD$	14 $ABC\bar{D}$
10	8 $A\bar{B}\bar{C}\bar{D}$	9 $A\bar{B}\bar{C}D$	11 $A\bar{B}CD$	10 $A\bar{B}C\bar{D}$

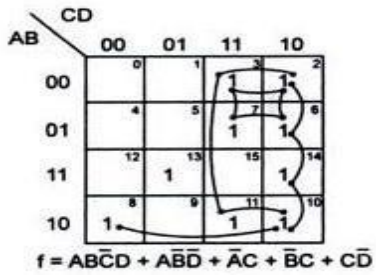
SOP form

AB \ CD	00	01	11	10
00	0 $A+B+C+D$	1 $A+B+C+\bar{D}$	3 $A+B+\bar{C}+\bar{D}$	2 $A+B+\bar{C}+D$
01	4 $A+\bar{B}+C+D$	5 $A+\bar{B}+C+\bar{D}$	7 $A+\bar{B}+\bar{C}+\bar{D}$	6 $A+\bar{B}+\bar{C}+D$
11	12 $\bar{A}+\bar{B}+C+D$	13 $\bar{A}+\bar{B}+C+\bar{D}$	15 $\bar{A}+\bar{B}+\bar{C}+\bar{D}$	14 $\bar{A}+\bar{B}+\bar{C}+D$
10	8 $\bar{A}+B+C+D$	9 $\bar{A}+B+C+\bar{D}$	11 $\bar{A}+B+\bar{C}+\bar{D}$	10 $\bar{A}+B+\bar{C}+D$

POS form

EX: Reduce using mapping the expression Σ m(2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14).

Start with the minterm with the least number of adjacencies. The minterm m_{13} has no adjacency. Keep it as it is. The m_8 has only one adjacency, m_{10}. Expand m_8 into a 2-square with m_{10}. The m_7 has two adjacencies, m_6 and m_3. Hence m_7 can be expanded into a 4-square with m_6, m_3 and m_2. Observe that, m_7, m_6, m_2, and m_3 form a geometric square. The m_{11} has 2 adjacencies, m_{10} and m_3. Observe that, m_{11}, m_{10}, m_3, and m_2 form a geometric square on wrapping the K-map. So expand m_{11} into a 4-square with m_{10}, m_3 and m_2. Note that, m_2 and m_3, have already become a part of the 4-square m_7, m_6, m_2, and m_3. But if m_{11} is expanded only into a 2-square with m_{10}, only one variable is eliminated. So m_2 and m_3 are used again to make another 4-square with m_{11} and m_{10} to eliminate two variables. Now only m_6 and m_{14} are left uncovered. They can form a 2-square that eliminates only one variable. Don't do that. See whether they can be expanded into a larger square. Observe that, m_2, m_6, m_{14}, and m_{10} form a rectangle. So m_6 and m_{14} can be expanded into a 4-square with m_2 and m_{10}. This eliminates two variables.



Five variable k-map:

Five variable k-map can have 2^5 =32 possible combinations of input variable as , E,--------ABCDE with minterms m_0, m_1-----m_{31} respectively in SOP & A+B+C+D+E, A+B+C+ ,--------- + + + + with maxterms M_0,M_1, ----------
M_{31} respectively in POS form. It has 2^5=32 squares or cells of the k-map are divided into 2 blocks of
16 squares each.The left block represents minterms from m_0 to m_{15} in which A is a 0, and the right block represents minterms from m_{16} to m_{31} in which A is 1.The 5-variable k-map may contain 2-squares, 4-squares , 8-squares , 16-squares or 32-squares involving these two blocks. Squares are also considered adjacent in these two blocks, if when superimposing one block on top of another, the squares coincide with one another.

Some possible 2-squares in a five-variable map are m_0, m_{16}; m_2, m_{18}; m_5, m_{21}; m_{15}, m_{31}; m_{11}, m_{27}.

Some possible 4-squares are m_0, m_2, m_{16}, m_{18}; m_0, m_1, m_{16}, m_{17}; m_0, m_4, m_{16}, m_{20}; m_{13}, m_{15}, m_{29}, m_{31}; m_5, m_{13}, m_{21}, m_{29}.

Some possible 8-squares are m_0, m_1, m_3, m_2, m_{16}, m_{17}, m_{19}, m_{18}; m_0, m_4, m_{12}, m_8, m_{16}, m_{20}, m_{28}, m_{24}; m_5, m_7, m_{13}, m_{15}, m_{21}, m_{23}, m_{29}, m_{31}.

The squares are read by dropping out the variables which change. Some possible Grouping s is

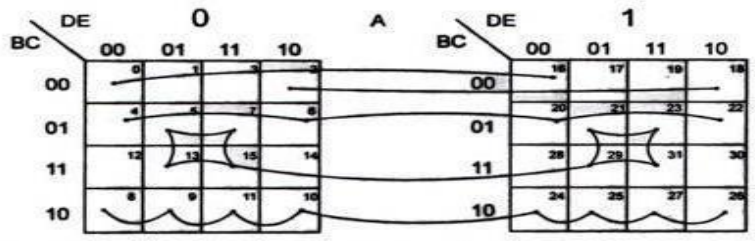
(a) $m_0, m_{16} = \overline{B}\,\overline{C}\,\overline{D}\,\overline{E}$ — $M_0, M_{16} = B + C + D + E$

(b) $m_2, m_{18} = \overline{B}\,\overline{C}D\overline{E}$ — $M_2, M_{18} = B + C + \overline{D} + E$

(c) $m_4, m_6, m_{20}, m_{22} = \overline{B}C\overline{E}$ — $M_4, M_6, M_{20}, M_{22} = B + \overline{C} + E$

(d) $m_5, m_7, m_{13}, m_{15}, m_{21}, m_{23}, m_{29}, m_{31} = CE$ — $M_5, M_7, M_{13}, M_{15}, M_{21}, M_{23}, M_{29}, M_{31} = \overline{C} + \overline{E}$

(e) $m_8, m_9, m_{10}, m_{11}, m_{24}, m_{25}, m_{26}, m_{27} = B\overline{C}$ — $M_8, M_9, M_{10}, M_{11}, M_{24}, M_{25}, M_{26}, M_{27} = \overline{B} + C$



Ex: F=∑m(0,1,4,5,6,13,14,15,22,24,25,28,29,30,31) is SOP

POS is F=πM(2,3,7,8,9,10,11,12,16,17,18,19,20,21,23,26,27)

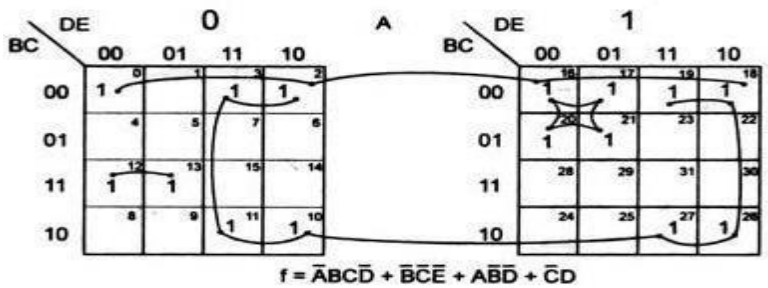
The real minimal expression is the minimal of the SOP and POS forms.

The reduction is done as

1. There is no isolated 1s
2. M_{12} can go only with m_{13}. Form a 2-square which is read as A‘BCD‘
3. M_0 can go with m_2,m_{16} and m_{18} . so form a 4-square which is read as B‘C‘E‘
4. M_{20},m_{21},m_{17} and m_{16} form a 4-square which is read as AB‘D‘
5. M2,m3,m18,m19,m10,m11,m26 and m27 form an 8-square which is read as C‘d
6. Write all the product terms in SOP form.

So the minimal expression is

F_{min}= A‘BCD‘+B‘C‘E‘+AB‘D‘+C‘D(16 inputs)



In the POS k-map ,the reduction is done as:

1. There are no isolated 0s

3. **M_1 can go only with M_5. So, make a 2-square, which is read as (A + B + D + $\bar{E}$).**
   M_4 can go with M_5, M_7, and M_6 to form a 4-square, which is read as (A + B + $\bar{C}$).

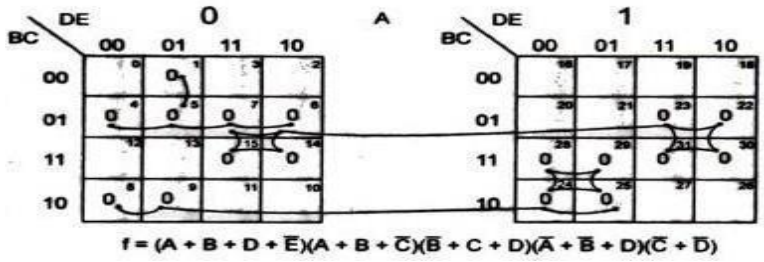
4.M_8

5. M_{28}

6.M_{30}

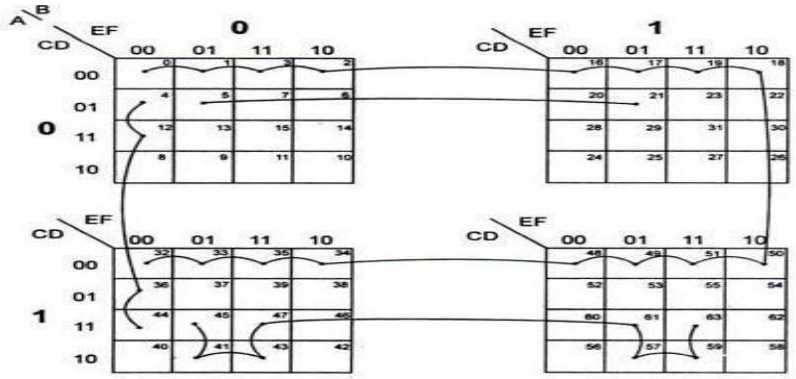
7. Sum terms in POS form. So the minimal expression in POS is

   F_{min}= A‘BcD‘+B‘C‘E‘+AB‘D‘+C‘D



Six variable k-map:

Six variable k-map can have 2^6 =64 combinations as , ,--------- ---ABCDEF with minterms m_0, m_1-----m_{63} respectively in SOP & (A+B+C+D+E+F), ---------- (+ + + + +) with maxterms M_0,M_1, ----------M_{63} respectively in POS form. It has 2^6=64 squares or cells of the k-map are divided into 4 blocks of 16 squares each.



Some possible groupings in a six variable k-map

Don't care combinations: For certain input combinations, the value of the output is unspecified either because the input combinations are invalid or because the precise value of the output is of no consequence. The combinations for which the value of experiments are not specified are called don't care combinations are invalid or because the precise value of the output is of no consequence. The combinations for which the value of expressions is not specified are called don't care combinations or Optional Combinations, such expressions stand incompletely specified. The output is a don't care for these invalid combinations.

Ex:In XS-3 code system, the binary states 0000, 0001, 0010,1101,1110,1111 are unspecified. & never occur called don't cares.

A standard SOP expression with don't cares can be converted into a standard POS form by keeping the don't cares as they are & writing the missing minterms of the SOP form as the maxterms of the POS form viceversa.

Don't cares denoted by _X' or _φ'

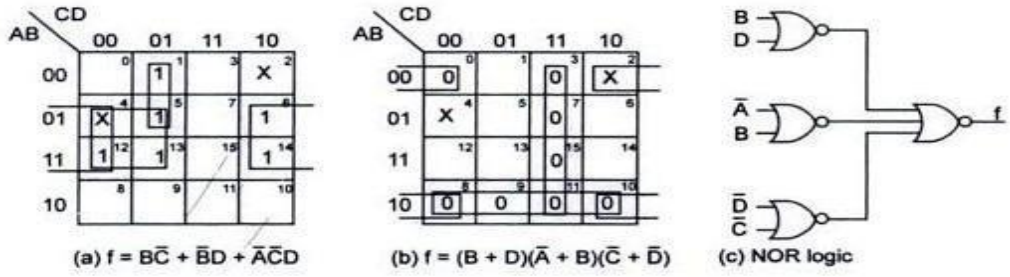
Ex:f=∑m(1,5,6,12,13,14)+d(2,4)

Or f=π M(0,3,7,9,10,11,15).πd(2,4)

SOP minimal form f_{min}= +B +

POS minimal form f_{min}=(B+D)(+B)(+D)

= + + + + (+



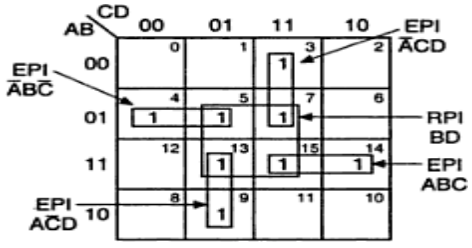
Prime implicants, Essential Prime implicants, Redundant prime implicants:

Each square or rectangle made up of the bunch of adjacent minterms is called a subcube. Each of these subcubes is called a Prime implicant (PI). The PI which contains at leastone which cannot be covered by any other prime implicants is called as Essential Prime implicant (EPI).The PI whose each 1 is covered at least by one EPI is called a Redundant Prime implicant (RPI). A PI which is neither an EPI nor a RPI is called a Selective Prime implicant (SPI).

The function has unique MSP comprising EPI is

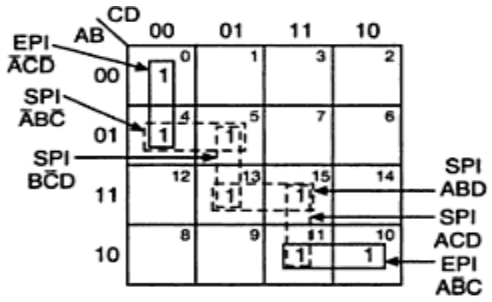
F(A,B,C,D)= CD+ABC+A D + B

The RPI _BD‘ may be included without changing the function but the resulting expression would not be in minimal SOP(MSP) form.



Essential and Redundant Prime Implicants

F(A,B,C,D)=∑m(0,4,5,10,11,13,15) SPI are marked by dotted squares, shows MSP form of a function need not be unique.



Essential and Selective Prime Implicants

Here, the MSP form is obtained by including two EPI‘s & selecting a set of SPI‘s to cover remaining uncovered minterms 5,13,15. & these can be covered as

(A) (4,5) &(13,15) ----------B +ABD
(B) (5,13) & (13,15) --------B D+ABD
(C) (5,13) & (15,11) -------B D+ACD

F(A,B,C,D)= +A C---------EPI‘s + B +ABD

(OR) F(A,B,C,D)= +A C---------EPI‘s + B D+ABD

(OR) F(A,B,C,D)= +A C---------EPI‘s + B D+ACD

False PI’s Essential False PI’s, Redundant False PI’s & Selective False PI’s:

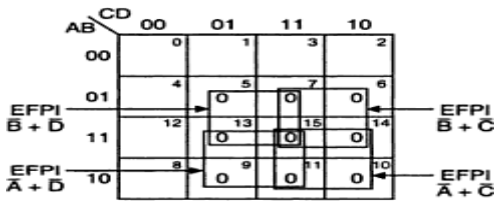
The maxterms are called falseminterms. The PI‘s is obtained by using the maxterms are called False PI‘s (FPI). The FPI which contains at least one _0‘ which can‘t be covered by only other FPI is called an Essential False Prime implicant (ESPI)

F(A,B,C,D)= ∑m(0,1,2,3,4,8,12)

=π M(5,6,7,9,10,11,13,14,15)

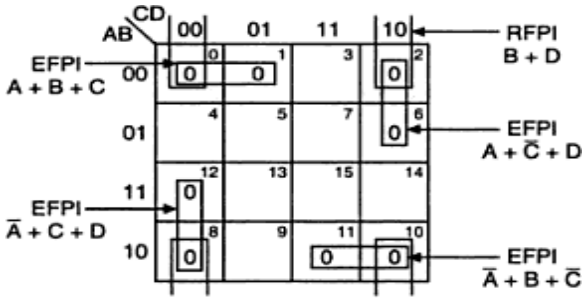
F_{min}= (+)(+)(+)(+)

All the FPI, EFPI‘s as each of them contain atleast one _0‘ which can‘t be covered by any other FPI



Essential False Prime implicants

Consider Function F(A,B,C,D)= π M(0,1,2,6,8,10,11,12)



Essential and Redundant False Prime Implicants

Mapping when the function is not expressed in minterms (maxterms):

An expression in k-map must be available as a sum (product) of minterms (maxterms). However if not so expressed, it is not necessary to expand the expression algebraically into its minterms (maxterms). Instead, expansion into minterms (maxterms) can be accomplished in the process of entering the terms of the expression on the k-map.

Limitations of Karnaugh maps:

- Convenient as long as the number of variables does not exceed six.
- Manual technique, simplification process is heavily dependent on the human abilities.

Quine-Mccluskey Method:

It also known as *Tabular method.* It is more systematic method of minimizing expressions of even larger number of variables. It is suitable for hand computation as well as computation by machines i.e., programmable. . The procedure is based on repeated application of the combining theorem.

PA+P =P (P is set of literals) on all adjacent pairs of terms, yields the set of all PI‘s from which a minimal sum may be selected.

Consider expression

$\sum m(0,1,4,5)$= + C+A +A C

First, second terms & third, fourth terms can be combined

(+)+ (C+)= +A

Reduced to

(+)=

The same result can be obtained by combining m_0& m_4 & m_1&m_5 in first step & resulting terms in the second step .

Procedure:

- Decimal Representation
- Don‘t cares
- PI chart
- EPI
- Dominating Rows & Columns
- Determination of Minimal expressions in complescases.

Branching Method:

EXAMPLE 3.29 Obtain the set of prime implicants for the Boolean expression $f = \Sigma\, m(0, 1, 6, 7, 8, 9, 13, 14, 15)$ using the tabular method.

Solution

Group the minterms in terms of the number of 1s present in them and write their binary designations. The procedure to obtain the prime implicants is shown in Table 3.3.

Table 3.3 Example 3.29

	Column 1		Column 2		Column 3
	Minterm	**Binary designation**		**A B C D**	**A B C D**
Index 0	0	0 0 0 0 ✓	0, 1 (1)	0 0 0 – ✓	0, 1, 8, 9 (1, 8) – 0 0 – Q
Index 1	1	0 0 0 1 ✓	0, 8 (8)	– 0 0 0 ✓	... ...
	8	1 0 0 0 ✓	1, 9 (8)	– 0 0 1 ✓	... ...
Index 2	6	0 1 1 0 ✓	8, 9 (1)	1 0 0 – ✓	6, 7, 14, 15 (1, 8) – 1 1 – P
	9	1 0 0 1 ✓	6, 7 (1)	0 1 1 – ✓	
Index 3	7	0 1 1 1 ✓	6, 14 (8)	– 1 1 0 ✓	
	13	1 1 0 1 ✓	9, 13 (4)	1 – 0 1 S	
	14	1 1 1 0 ✓	7, 15 (8)	– 1 1 1 ✓	
Index 4	15	1 1 1 1 ✓	13, 15 (2)	1 1 – 1 R	
			14, 15 (1)	1 1 1 – ✓	

Comparing the terms of index 0 with the terms of index 1 of column 1, $m_0(0000)$ is combined with $m_1(0001)$ to yield 0, 1 (1), i.e. 000 –. This is recorded in column 2 and 0000 and 0001 are checked off in column 1. $m_0(0000)$ is combined with $m_8(1000)$ to yield 0, 8 (8), i.e. – 000. This is recorded in column 2 and 1000 is checked off in column 1. Note that 0000 of column 1 has already been checked off. No more combinations of terms of index 0 and index 1 are possible. So, draw a line below the last combination of these groups, i.e. below 0, 8 (8), – 000 in column 2. Now 0, 1 (1), i.e. 000 – and 0, 8 (8), i.e. – 000 are the terms in the first group of column 2.

Comparing the terms of index 1 with the terms of index 2 in column 1, $m_1(0001)$ is combined with $m_9(1001)$ to yield 1, 9 (8), i.e. – 001. This is recorded in column 2 and 1001 is checked off in column 1 because 0001 has already been checked off. $m_8(1000)$ is combined with $m_9(1001)$ to yield 8, 9 (1), i.e. 100 –. This is recorded in column 2. 1000 and 1001 of column 1 have already been checked off. So, no need to check them off again. No more combinations of terms of index 1 and index 2 are possible. So, draw a line below the last combination of these groups, i.e. 8, 9 (1), -- 001 in column 2. Now 1, 9 (8), i.e. – 001 and 8, 9 (1), i.e. 100– are the terms in the second group of column 2.

Similarly, comparing the terms of index 2 with the terms of index 3 in column 1,

$m_6(0110)$ and $m_7(0111)$ yield 6, 7 (1), i.e. 011–. Record it in column 2 and check off 6(0110) and 7(0111).

$m_6(0110)$ and $m_{14}(1110)$ yield 6, 14 (8), i.e. –110. Record it in column 2 and check off 6(0110) and 14(1110).

$m_9(1001)$ and $m_{13}(1101)$ yield 9, 13 (4), i.e. 1–01. Record it in column 2 and check off 9(1001) and 13(1101).

So, 6, 7 (1), i.e. 011–, and 6, 14 (8), i.e. –110 and 9, 13 (4), i.e. 1–01 are the terms in group 3 of column 2. Draw a line at the end of 9, 13 (4), i.e. 1–01.

Also, comparing the terms of index 3 with the terms of index 4 in column 1,

$m_7(0111)$ and $m_{15}(1111)$ yield 7, 15 (8), i.e. –111. Record it in column 2 and check off 7(0111) and 15(1111).

$m_{13}(1101)$ and $m_{15}(1111)$ yield 13, 15 (2), i.e. 11–1. Record it in column 2 and check off 13 and 15.

$m_{14}(1110)$ and $m_{15}(1111)$ yield 14, 15 (1), i.e. 111–. Record it in column 2 and check off 14 and 15.

So, 7, 15 (8), i.e. –111, and 13, 15 (2), i.e. 11–1 and 14, 15 (1), i.e. 111– are the terms in group 4 of column 2. Column 2 is completed now.

Comparing the terms of group 1 with the terms of group 2 in column 2, the terms 0, 1 (1), i.e. 000– and 8, 9 (1), i.e. 100– are combined to form 0, 1, 8, 9 (1, 8), i.e. –00–. Record it in group 1 of column 3 and check off 0, 1 (1), i.e. 000–, and 8, 9 (1), i.e. 100– of column 2. The terms 0, 8 (8), i.e. –000 and 1, 9 (8), i.e. –001 are combined to form 0, 1, 8, 9 (1, 8), i.e. –00–. This has already been recorded in column 3. So, no need to record again. Check off 0, 8 (8), i.e. –000 and 1, 9 (8), i.e. –001 of column 2. Draw a line below 0, 1, 8, 9 (1, 8), i.e. –00–. This is the only term in group 1 of column 3. No term of group 2 of column 2 can be combined with any term of group 3 of column 2. So, no entries are made in group 2 of column 2.

Comparing the terms of group 3 of column 2 with the terms of group 4 of column 2, the terms 6, 7 (1), i.e. 011–, and 14, 15 (1), i.e. 111– are combined to form 6, 7, 14, 15 (1, 8), i.e. –11–. Record it in group 3 of column 3 and check off 6, 7 (1), i.e. 011– and 14, 15 (1), i.e. 111– of column 2. The terms 6, 14 (8), i.e. –110 and 7, 15 (8), i.e. –111 are combined to form 6, 7, 14, 15 (1, 8), i.e. –11–. This has already been recorded in column 3; so, check off 6, 14 (8), i.e. –110 and 7, 15 (8), i.e. –111 of column 2.

Observe that the terms 9, 13 (4), i.e. 1–01 and 13, 15 (2), i.e. 11–1 cannot be combined with any other terms. Similarly in column 3, the terms 0, 1, 8, 9 (1, 8), i.e. –00– and 6, 7, 14, 15 (1, 8), i.e. –11– cannot also be combined with any other terms. So, these 4 terms are the prime implicants.

The terms, which cannot be combined further, are labelled as P, Q, R, and S. These form the set of prime implicants.

EX:

Obtain the minimal expression for f = Σ m(1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 15) using the tabular method.

Solution

The procedure to obtain the set of prime implicants is illustrated in Table 3.4.

Table 3.4 Example 3.30

Step 1		Step 2	Step 3	
Index 1	1 ✓	1, 3 (2) ✓	1, 3, 5, 7 (2, 4)	T
	2 ✓	1, 5 (4) ✓	1, 5, 9, 13 (4, 8)	S
	8 ✓	1, 9 (8) ✓	2, 3, 6, 7 (1, 4)	R
Index 2	3 ✓	2, 3 (1) ✓	8, 9, 12, 13 (1, 4)	Q
	5 ✓	2, 6 (4) ✓	5, 7, 13, 15 (2, 8)	P
	6 ✓	8, 9 (1) ✓		
	9 ✓	8, 12 (4) ✓		
	12 ✓	3, 7 (4) ✓		
Index 3	7 ✓	5, 7 (2) ✓		
	13 ✓	5, 13 (8) ✓		
Index 4	15 ✓	6, 7 (1) ✓		
		9, 13 (4) ✓		
		12, 13 (1) ✓		
		7, 15 (8) ✓		
		13, 15 (2) ✓		

The non-combinable terms P, Q, R, S and T are recorded as prime implicants.

$$P \rightarrow 5, 7, 13, 15\ (2, 8) = X\ 1\ X\ 1 = BD$$

(Literals with weights 2 and 8, i.e. C and A are deleted. The lowest minterm is $m_5(5 = 4 + 1)$. So, literals with weights 4 and 1, i.e. B and D are present in non-complemented form. So, read it as BD.)

$$Q \rightarrow 8, 9, 12, 13\ (1, 4) = 1\ X\ 0\ X = A\overline{C}$$

(Literals with weights 1 and 4, i.e. D and B are deleted. The lowest minterm is m_8. So, literal with weight 8 is present in non-complemented form and literal with weight 2 is present in complemented form. So, read it as $A\overline{C}$.)

$$R \rightarrow 2, 3, 6, 7\ (1, 4) = 0\ X\ 1\ X = \overline{A}C$$

(Literals with weights 1 and 4, i.e. D and B are deleted. The lowest minterm is m_2. So, literal with weight 2 is present in non-complemented form and literal with weight 8 is present in complemented form. So, read it as $\overline{A}C$.)

$$S \rightarrow 1, 5, 9, 13\ (4, 8) = X\ X\ 0\ 1 = \overline{C}D$$

(Literals with weights 4 and 8, i.e. B and A are deleted. The lowest minterm is m_1. So, literal with weight 1 is present in non-complemented form and literal with weight 2 is present in complemented form. So, read it as $\overline{C}D$.)

$$T \rightarrow 1, 3, 5, 7\ (2, 4) = 0\ X\ X\ 1 = \overline{A}D$$

(Literals with weights 2 and 4, i.e. C and B are deleted. The lowest minterm is 1. So, literal with weight 1 is present in non-complemented form and literal with weight 8 is present in complemented form. So, read it as $\overline{A}D$.)

The prime implicant chart of the expression

$$f = \Sigma\ m(1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 15)$$

is as shown in Table 3.5. It consists of 11 columns corresponding to the number of minterms and 5 rows corresponding to the prime implicants P, Q, R, S, and T generated. Row R contains four ×s at the intersections with columns 2, 3, 6, and 7, because these minterms are covered by the prime implicant R. A row is said to cover the columns in which it has ×s. The problem now is to select a minimal subset of prime implicants, such that each column contains at least one × in the rows corresponding to the selected subset and the total number of literals in the prime implicants selected is as small as possible. These requirements guarantee that the number of unions of the selected prime implicants is equal to the original number of minterms and that, no other expression containing fewer literals can be found.

Table 3.5 Example 3.30: Prime implicant chart

		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	1	2	3	5	6	7	8	9	12	13	15
*P → 5, 7, 13, 15 (2, 8)				×		×				×	×
*Q → 8, 9, 12, 13 (1, 4)							×	×	×	×	
*R → 2, 3, 6, 7 (1, 4)		×	×		×	×					
S → 1, 5, 9, 13 (4, 8)	×			×				×		×	
T → 1, 3, 5, 7 (2, 4)	×		×	×		×					

In the prime implicant chart of Table 3.5, m_2 and m_6 are covered by R only. So, R is an essential prime implicant. So, check off all the minterms covered by it, i.e. m_2, m_3, m_6, and m_7. Q is also an essential prime implicant because only Q covers m_8 and m_{12}. Check off all the minterms covered by it, i.e. m_8, m_9, m_{12}, and m_{13}. P is also an essential prime implicant, because m_{15} is covered only by P. So check off m_{15}, m_5, m_7, and m_{13} covered by it. Thus, only minterm 1 is not covered. Either row S or row T can cover it and both have the same number of literals. Thus, two minimal expressions are possible.

$$P + Q + R + S = BD + A\overline{C} + \overline{A}C + \overline{C}D$$

or

$$P + Q + R + T = BD + A\overline{C} + \overline{A}C + \overline{A}D$$

MODULE III:
Combinational Logic Circuits

Combinational Logic Design

Logic circuits for digital systems may be combinational or sequential. The output of a combinational circuit depends on its present inputs only .Combinational circuit processing operation fully specified logically by a set of Boolean functions .A combinational circuit consists of input variables, logic gates and output variables.Both input and output data are represented by signals, i.e., they exists in two possible values. One is logic –1 and the other logic 0.

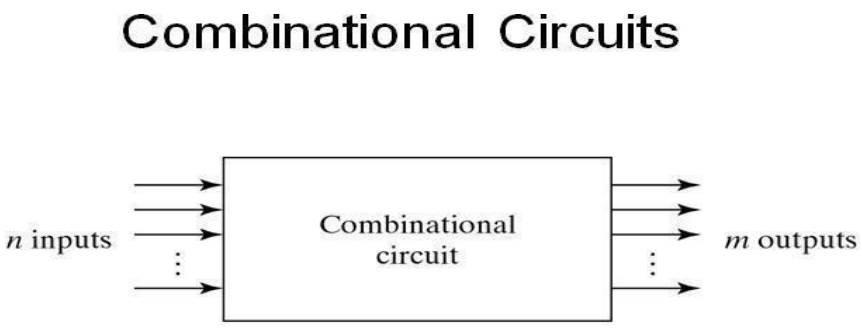


Fig. Block Diagram of Combinational Circuit

For n input variables,there are 2^n possible combinations of binary input variables .For each possible input Combination ,there is one and only one possible output combination.A combinational circuit can be described by m Boolean functions one for each output variables.Usually the input s comes from flip-flops and outputs goto flip-flops.

Design Procedure:

1.The problem is stated
2. The number of available input variables and required output variables is determined.
3.The input and output variables are assigned letter symbols.
4.The truth table that defines the required relationship between inputs and outputs is derived.
5.The simplified Boolean function for each output is obtained.
6.The logic diagram is drawn.

Adders:

Digital computers perform variety of information processing tasks,the one is arithmetic operations.And the most basic arithmetic operation is the addition of two binary digits.i.e, 4 basic possible operations are:

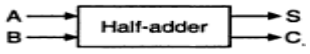
$$0+0=0,0+1=1,1+0=1,1+1=10$$

The first three operations produce a sum whose length is one digit, but when augends and addend bits are equal to 1,the binary sum consists of two digits.The higher significant bit of this result is called a carry.A combinational circuit that performs the addition of two bits is called a half- adder. One that performs the addition of 3 bits (two significant bits & previous carry) is called a full adder.& 2 half adder can employ as a full-adder.

The Half Adder: A Half Adder is a combinational circuit with two binary inputs (augends and addend bits and two binary outputs (sum and carry bits.) It adds the two inputs (A and B) and produces the sum (S) and the carry (C) bits. It is an arithmetic operation of addition of two single bit words.

Inputs		Outputs	
A	B	S	C
0	0	0	0
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

(a) Truth table



(b) Block diagram

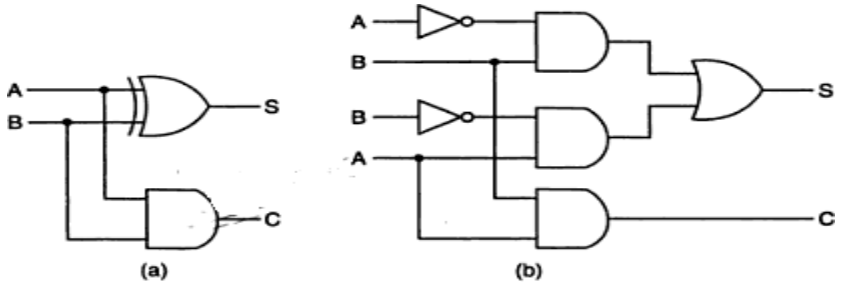
The Sum(S) bit and the carry (C) bit, according to the rules of binary addition, the sum (S) is the X-OR of A and B (It represents the LSB of the sum). Therefore,

$$S=A + B= \quad A \oplus B$$

The carry (C) is the AND of A and B (it is 0 unless both the inputs are 1).Therefore,

$$C=AB$$

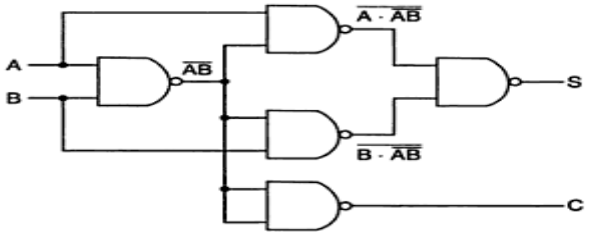
A half-adder can be realized by using one X-OR gate and one AND gate a



Logic diagrams of half-adder

NAND LOGIC:

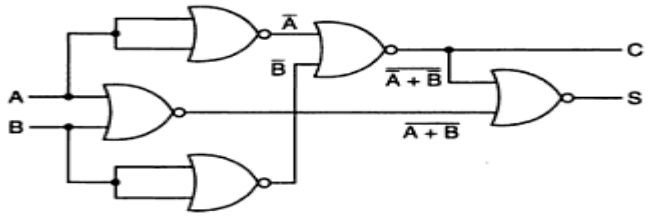
$$S = A\bar{B} + \bar{A}B = A\bar{B} + A\bar{A} + \bar{A}B + B\bar{B}$$
$$= A(\bar{A} + \bar{B}) + B(\bar{A} + \bar{B})$$
$$= A \cdot \overline{AB} + B \cdot \overline{AB}$$
$$= \overline{\overline{A \cdot \overline{AB}} \cdot \overline{B \cdot \overline{AB}}}$$
$$C = AB = \overline{\overline{AB}}$$



Logic diagram of a half-adder using only 2-input NAND gates.

NOR Logic:

$$S = A\bar{B} + \bar{A}B = A\bar{B} + A\bar{A} + \bar{A}B + B\bar{B}$$
$$= A(\bar{A} + \bar{B}) + B(\bar{A} + \bar{B})$$
$$= (A + B)(\bar{A} + \bar{B})$$
$$= \overline{\overline{A + B} + \overline{\bar{A} + \bar{B}}}$$
$$C = AB = \overline{\overline{AB}} = \overline{\bar{A} + \bar{B}}$$



Logic diagram of a half-adder using only 2-input NOR gates.

The Full Adder:

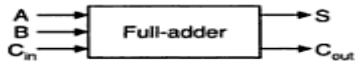
A Full-adder is a combinational circuit that adds two bits and a carry and outputs a sum bit and a carry bit. To add two binary numbers, each having two or more bits, the LSBs can be added by using a half-adder. The carry resulted from the addition of the LSBs is carried over to the next significant column and added to the two bits in that column. So, in the second and higher columns, the two data bits of that column and the carry bit generated from the addition in the previous column need to be added.

The full-adder adds the bits A and B and the carry from the previous column called the carry-in C_{in} and outputs the sum bit S and the carry bit called the carry-out C_{out} . The variable S gives the value of the least significant bit of the sum. The variable C_{out} gives the output carry.The

eight rows under the input variables designate all possible combinations of 1s and 0s that these variables may have. The 1s and 0s for the output variables are determined from the arithmetic sum of the input bits. When all the bits are 0s , the output is 0. The S output is equal to 1 when only 1 input is equal to 1 or when all the inputs are equal to 1. The C_{out} has a carry of 1 if two or three inputs are equal to 1.

Inputs			Sum	Carry
A	B	C_{in}	S	C_{out}
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	0
0	1	0	1	0
0	1	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	1	1

(a) Truth table



(b) Block diagram

Full-adder.

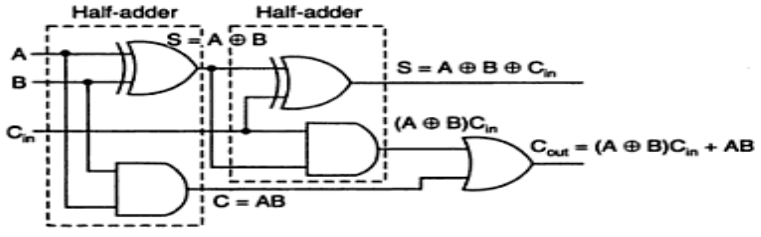
From the truth table, a circuit that will produce the correct sum and carry bits in response to every possible combination of A,B and C_{in} is described by

$$S = \bar{A}\bar{B}C_{in} + \bar{A}B\bar{C_{in}} + A\bar{B}\bar{C_{in}} + ABC_{in}$$
$$C_{out} = \bar{A}BC_{in} + A\bar{B}C_{in} + AB\bar{C_{in}} + ABC_{in}$$

and

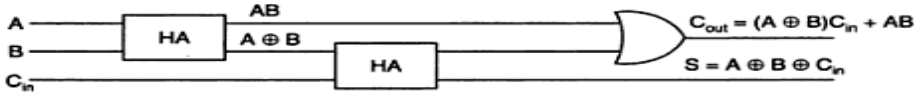
$$S = A \oplus B \oplus C_{in}$$
$$C_{out} = AC_{in} + BC_{in} + AB$$

The sum term of the full-adder is the X-OR of A,B, and C_{in}, i.e, the sum bit the modulo sum of the data bits in that column and the carry from the previous column. The logic diagram of the full-adder using two X-OR gates and two AND gates (i.e, Two half adders) and one OR gate is



Logic diagram of a full-adder using two half-adders.

The block diagram of a full-adder using two half-adders is



Block diagram of a full-adder using two half-adders.

Even though a full-adder can be constructed using two half-adders, the disadvantage is that the bits must propagate through several gates in accession, which makes the total propagation delay greater than that of the full-adder circuit using AOI logic.

The Full-adder neither can also be realized using universal logic, i.e., either only NAND gates or only NOR gates as

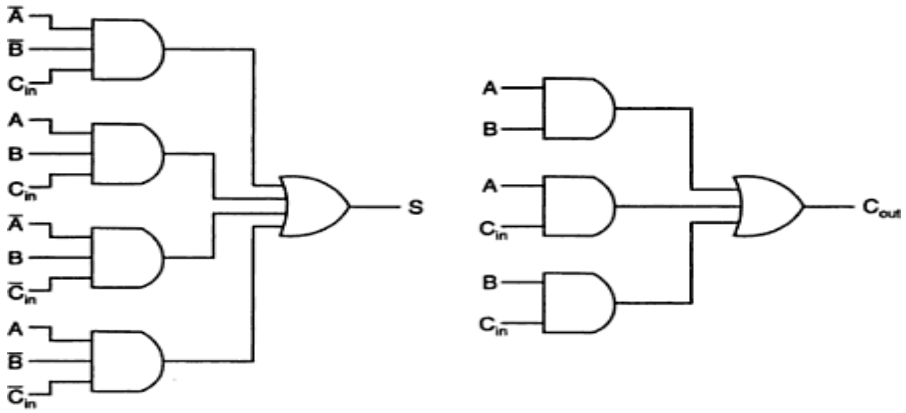
$$A \oplus B = \overline{\overline{A \cdot \overline{AB}} \cdot \overline{B \cdot \overline{AB}}}$$

Then

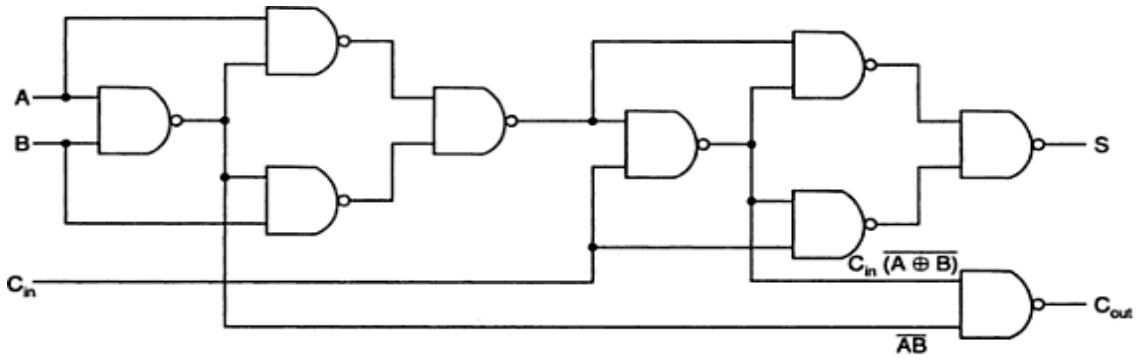
$$S = A \oplus B \oplus C_{in} = \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B) \cdot \overline{(A \oplus B)C_{in}}} \cdot \overline{C_{in} \cdot \overline{(A \oplus B)C_{in}}}}$$

NAND Logic:

$$C_{out} = C_{in}(A \oplus B) + AB = \overline{\overline{C_{in}(A \oplus B)} \cdot \overline{AB}}$$



Sum and carry bits of a full-adder using AOI logic.



Logic diagram of a full-adder using only 2-input NAND gates.

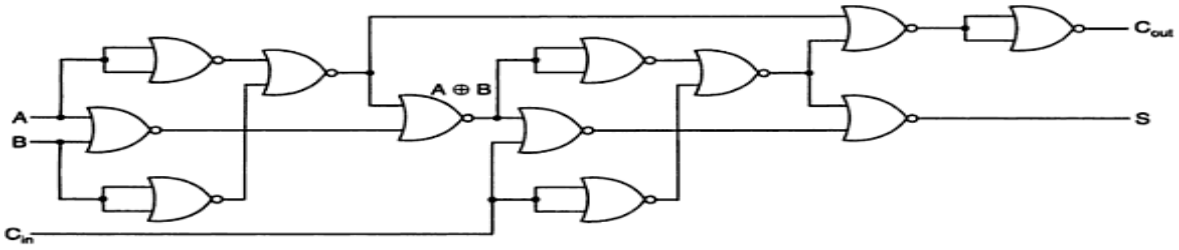
NOR Logic:

$$A \oplus B = \overline{\overline{(A + B)} + \overline{\overline{A} + \overline{B}}}$$

Then

$$S = A \oplus B \oplus C_{in} = \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B) + C_{in}} + \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B)} + \overline{C_{in}}}}$$

$$C_{out} = AB + C_{in}(A \oplus B) = \overline{\overline{A} + \overline{B}} + \overline{\overline{C_{in}} + \overline{A \oplus B}}$$



Logic diagram of a full-adder using only 2-input NOR gates.

Subtractors:

The subtraction of two binary numbers may be accomplished by taking the complement of the subtrahend and adding it to the minuend. By this, the subtraction operation becomes an addition operation and instead of having a separate circuit for subtraction, the adder itself can be used to perform subtraction. This results in reduction of hardware. In subtraction, each subtrahend bit of the number is subtracted from its corresponding significant minuend bit to form a difference bit. If the minuend bit is smaller than the subtrahend bit, a 1 is borrowed from the next significant position., that has been borrowed must be conveyed to the next higher pair of bits by means of a signal coming out (output) of a given stage and going into (input) the next higher stage.

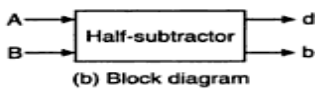
The Half-Subtractor:

A Half-subtractor is a combinational circuit that subtracts one bit from the other and produces the difference. It also has an output to specify if a 1 has been borrowed. . It is used to subtract the LSB of the subtrahend from the LSB of the minuend when one binary number is subtracted from the other.

A Half-subtractor is a combinational circuit with two inputs A and B and two outputs d and b. d indicates the difference and b is the output signal generated that informs the next stage that a 1 has been borrowed. When a bit B is subtracted from another bit A, a difference bit (d) and a borrow bit (b) result according to the rules given as

Inputs		Outputs	
A	B	d	b
0	0	0	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	0
0	1	1	1

(a) Truth table



(b) Block diagram

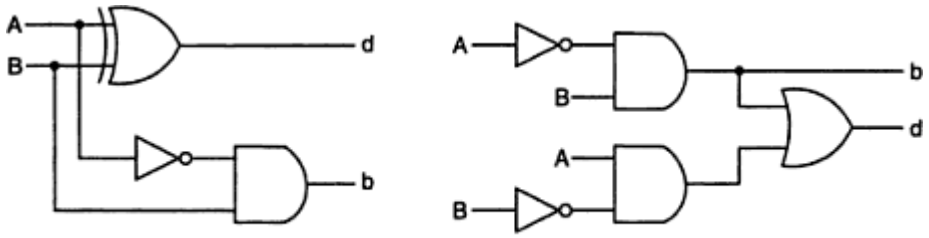
Half-subtractor.

The output borrow b is a 0 as long as A≥B. It is a 1 for A=0 and B=1. The d output is the result of the arithmetic operation 2b+A-B.

A circuit that produces the correct difference and borrow bits in response to every possible combination of the two 1-bit numbers is , therefore ,

$$d=A + B= A \oplus B \text{ and } b= \bar{A}B$$

That is, the difference bit is obtained by X-OR ing the two inputs, and the borrow bit is obtained by ANDing the complement of the minuend with the subtrahend.Note that logic for this exactly the same as the logic for output S in the half-adder.



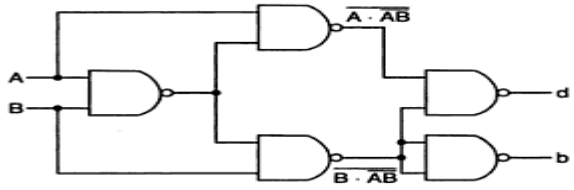
Logic diagrams of a half-subtractor.

A half-substractor can also be realized using universal logic either using only NAND gates or using NOR gates as:

NAND Logic:

$$d = A \oplus B = \overline{\overline{A \cdot \overline{AB}} \cdot \overline{B \cdot \overline{AB}}}$$

$$b = \bar{A}B = B(\bar{A} + \bar{B}) = B(\overline{AB}) = \overline{\overline{B \cdot \overline{AB}}}$$



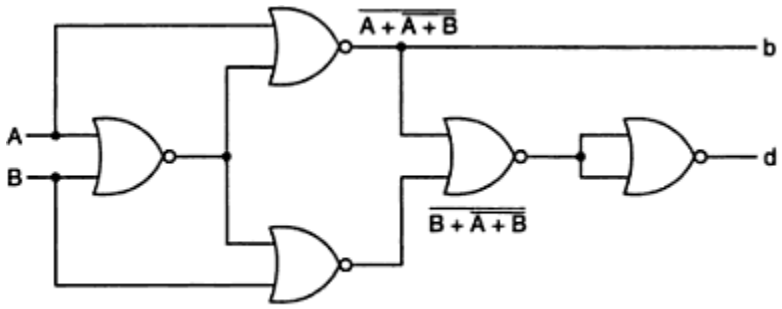
Logic diagram of a half-subtractor using only 2-input NAND gates.

NOR Logic:

$$d = A \oplus B = A\bar{B} + \bar{A}B = A\bar{B} + B\bar{B} + \bar{A}B + A\bar{A}$$

$$= \bar{B}(A + B) + \bar{A}(A + B) = \overline{\overline{B} + \overline{A + B}} + \overline{\overline{A} + \overline{A + B}}$$

$$d = \bar{A}B = \bar{A}(A + B) = \overline{\overline{\bar{A}(A + B)}} = \overline{A + (\overline{A + B})}$$



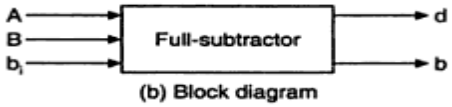
Logic diagram of a half-subtractor using only 2-input NOR gates.

The Full-Subtractor:

The half-subtractor can be only for LSB subtraction. IF there is a borrow during the subtraction of the LSBs, it affects the subtraction in the next higher column; the subtrahend bit is subtracted from the minuend bit, considering the borrow from that column used for the subtraction in the preceding column. Such a subtraction is performed by a full-subtractor. It subtracts one bit (B) from another bit (A) , when already there is a borrow b_i from this column for the subtraction in the preceding column, and outputs the difference bit (d) and the borrow bit(b) required from the next d and b. The two outputs present the difference and output borrow. The 1s and 0s for the output variables are determined from the subtraction of A-B-b_i.

Inputs			Difference	Borrow
A	B	b_i	d	b
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1	1
0	1	0	1	1
0	1	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	0
1	1	0	0	0
1	1	1	1	1

(a) Truth table



(b) Block diagram

Full-subtractor.

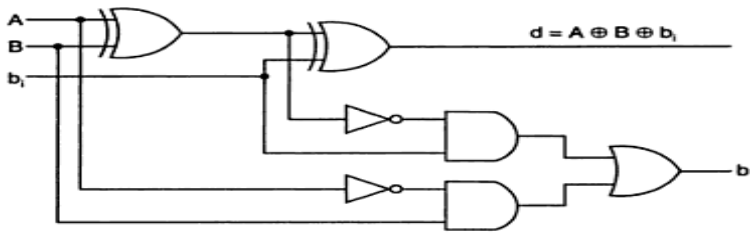
From the truth table, a circuit that will produce the correct difference and borrow bits in response to every possiblecombinations of A,B and b_i is

$$d = \bar{A}\bar{B}b_i + \bar{A}B\bar{b}_i + A\bar{B}\bar{b}_i + ABb_i$$
$$= b_i(AB + \bar{A}\bar{B}) + \bar{b}_i(A\bar{B} + \bar{A}B)$$
$$= b_i(\overline{A \oplus B}) + \bar{b}_i(A \oplus B) = A \oplus B \oplus b_i$$

and

$$b = \bar{A}\bar{B}b_i + \bar{A}B\bar{b}_i + \bar{A}Bb_i + ABb_i = \bar{A}B(b_i + \bar{b}_i) + (AB + \bar{A}\bar{B})b_i$$
$$= \bar{A}B + (\overline{A \oplus B})b_i$$

A full-subtractor can be realized using X-OR gates and AOI gates as



Logic diagram of a full-subtractor.

The full subtractor can also be realized using universal logic either using only NAND gates or using NOR gates as:

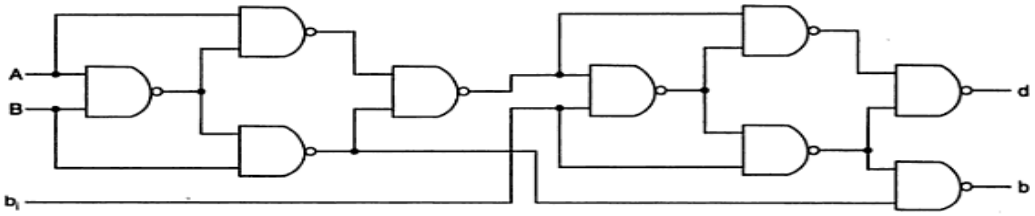
NAND Logic:

$$d = A \oplus B \oplus b_i = \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B) \oplus b_i}} = \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B)\overline{(A \oplus B)b_i}} \cdot \overline{b_i\overline{(A \oplus B)b_i}}}$$

$$b = \bar{A}B + b_i(\overline{A \oplus B}) = \overline{\bar{A}B + b_i\overline{(A \oplus B)}}$$

$$= \overline{\overline{\bar{A}B} \cdot \overline{b_i(A \oplus B)}} = \overline{B(\bar{A} + \bar{B}) \cdot b_i(\bar{b}_i + (A \oplus B))}$$

$$= \overline{\overline{B \cdot \bar{A}B} \cdot \overline{b_i[\bar{b}_i \cdot (A \oplus B)]}}$$



Logic diagram of a full-subtractor using only 2-input NAND gates.

NOR Logic:

$$d = A \oplus B \oplus b_i = \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B) \oplus b_i}}$$

$$= \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B)b_i} + \overline{(A \oplus B)\bar{b}_i}}$$

$$= \overline{[(A \oplus B) + \overline{(A \oplus B)\bar{b}_i}][b_i + \overline{(A \oplus B)\bar{b}_i}]}$$

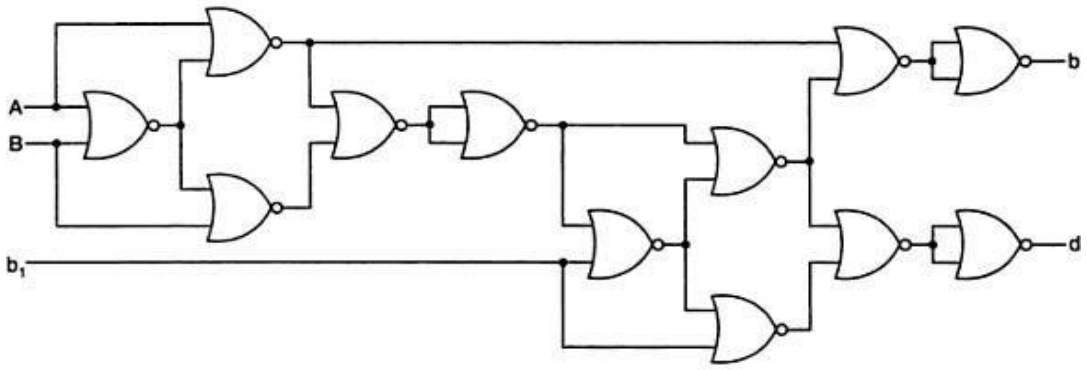
$$= \overline{(A \oplus B) + \overline{(A \oplus B) + b_i}} + \overline{b_i + \overline{(A \oplus B) + b_i}}$$

$$= \overline{\overline{(A \oplus B) + \overline{(A \oplus B) + b_i}} + \overline{b_i + \overline{(A \oplus B) + b_i}}}$$

$$b = \bar{A}B + b_i(\overline{A \oplus B})$$

$$= \bar{A}(A + B) + (\overline{A \oplus B})[(A \oplus B) + b_i]$$

$$= \overline{\overline{A + \overline{A + B}} + \overline{(A \oplus B) + \overline{(A \oplus B) + b_i}}}$$

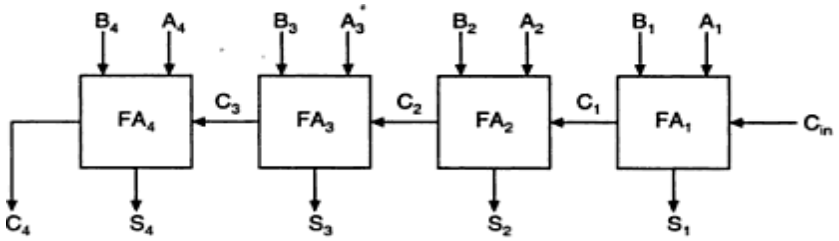


Logic diagram of a full subtractor using only 2-input NOR gates.

Binary Parallel Adder:

A binary parallel adder is a digital circuit that adds two binary numbers in parallel form and produces the arithmetic sum of those numbers in parallel form. It consists of full adders connected in a chain , with the output carry from each full-adder connected to the input carry of the next full-adder in the chain.

The interconnection of four full-adder (FA) circuits to provide a 4-bit parallel adder. The augends bits of A and addend bits of B are designated by subscript numbers from right to left, with subscript 1 denoting the lower –order bit. The carries are connected in a chain through the full-adders. The input carry to the adder is C_{in} and the output carry is C_4. The S output generates the required sum bits. When the 4-bit full-adder circuit is enclosed within an IC package, it has four terminals for the augends bits, four terminals for the addend bits, four terminals for the sum bits, and two terminals for the input and output carries. AN n-bit parallel adder requires n-full adders. It can be constructed from 4-bit, 2-bit and 1-bit full adder ICs by cascading several packages. The output carry from one package must be connected to the input carry of the one with the next higher –order bits. The 4-bit full adder is a typical example of an MSI function.



Logic diagram of a 4-bit binary parallel adder.

Ripple carry adder:

In the parallel adder, the carry –out of each stage is connected to the carry-in of the next stage. The sum and carry-out bits of any stage cannot be produced, until sometime after the carry-in of that stage occurs. This is due to the propagation delays in the logic circuitry,

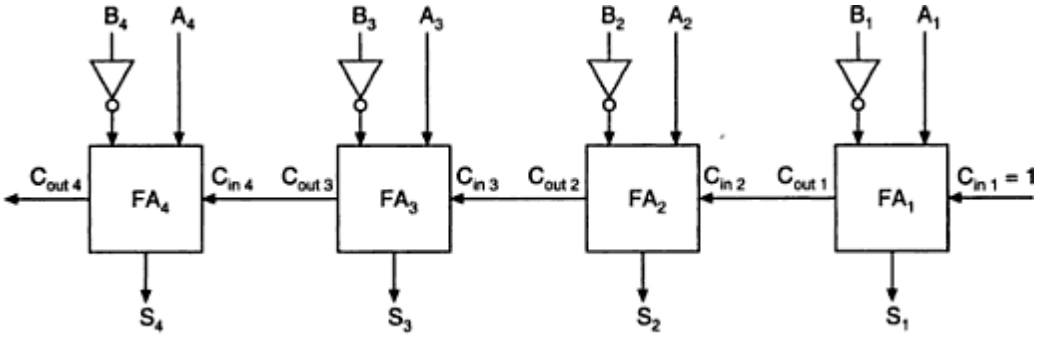
which lead to a time delay in the addition process. The carry propagation delay for each full- adder is the time between the application of the carry-in and the occurrence of the carry-out.

The 4-bit parallel adder, the sum (S_1) and carry-out (C_1) bits given by FA_1 are not valid, until after the propagation delay of FA_1. Similarly, the sum S_2 and carry-out (C_2) bits given by FA_2 are not valid until after the cumulative propagation delay of two full adders (FA_1 and FA_2) , and so on. At each stage ,the sum bit is not valid until after the carry bits in all the preceding stages are valid. Carry bits must propagate or ripple through all stages before the most significant sum bit is valid. Thus, the total sum (the parallel output) is not valid until after the cumulative delay of all the adders.

The parallel adder in which the carry-out of each full-adder is the carry-in to the next most significant adder is called a ripple carry adder.. The greater the number of bits that a ripple carry adder must add, the greater the time required for it to perform a valid addition. If two numbers are added such that no carries occur between stages, then the add time is simply the propagation time through a single full-adder.

4-Bit Parallel Subtractor:

The subtraction of binary numbers can be carried out most conveniently by means of complements , the subtraction A-B can be done by taking the 2‘s complement of B and adding it to A . The 2‘s complement can be obtained by taking the 1‘s complement and adding 1 to the least significant pair of bits. The 1‘s complement can be implemented with inverters as

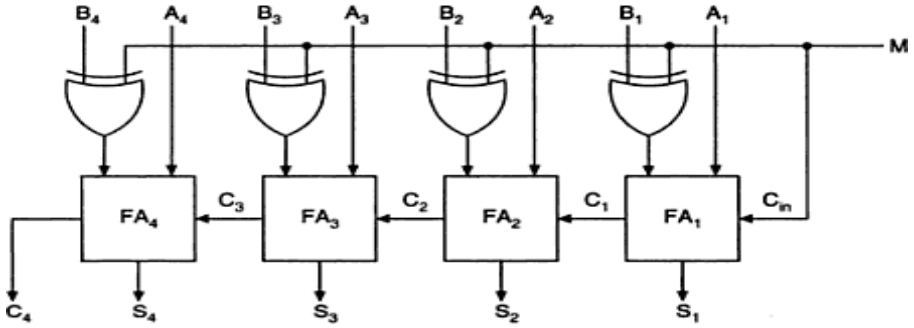


Logic diagram of a 4-bit parallel subtractor.

Binary-Adder Subtractor:

A 4-bit adder-subtractor, the addition and subtraction operations are combined into one circuit with one common binary adder. This is done by including an X-OR gate with each full-adder. The mode input M controls the operation. When M=0, the circuit is an adder, and when M=1, the circuit becomes a subtractor. Each X-OR gate receives input M and one of the inputs of B. When M=0, $B \oplus 0 = B$ .The full-adder receives the value of B , the input carry is 0

and the circuit performs A+B. when $B \oplus 1 = B'$ and C_1=1. The B inputs are complemented and a 1 is through the input carry. The circuit performs the operation A plus the 2's complement of B.



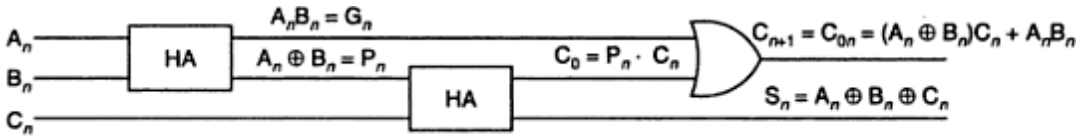
Logic diagram of a 4-bit binary adder-subtractor.

The Look-Ahead –Carry Adder:

In parallel-adder,the speed with which an addition can be performed is governed by the time required for the carries to propagate or ripple through all of the stages of the adder. The look-ahead carry adder speeds up the process by eliminating this ripple carry delay. It examines all the input bits simultaneously and also generates the carry-in bits for all the stages simultaneously.

The method of speeding up the addition process is based on the two additional functions of the full-adder, called the carry generate and carry propagate functions.

Consider one full adder stage; say the nth stage of a parallel adder as shown in fig. we know that is made by two half adders and that the half adder contains an X-OR gate to produce the sum and an AND gate to produce the carry. If both the bits A_n and B_n are 1s, a carry has to be generated in this stage regardless of whether the input carry C_{in} is a 0 or a 1. This is called generated carry, expressed as $G_n = A_n.B_n$ which has to appear at the output through the OR gate as shown in fig.



A full adder (*n*th stage of a parallel adder).

Thereis another possibility of producing a carry out. X-OR gate inside the half-adder at the input produces an intermediary sum bit- call it P_n –which is expressed as $P_n = A_n \oplus B_n$. Next P_n and C_n are added using the X-OR gate inside the second half adder to produce the final

sum bit and $S_n = P_n \oplus C_n$ where $P_n = A_n \oplus B_n$ and output carry$C_0 = P_n.C_n = (A_n \oplus B_n)C_n$ which becomes carry for the (n+1) th stage.

Consider the case of both P_n and C_n being 1. The input carry C_n has to be propagated to the output only if P_n is 1. If P_n is 0, even if C_n is 1, the and gate in the second half-adder will inhibit C_n . the carry out of the nth stage is 1 when either $G_n=1$ or $P_n.C_n=1$ or both G_n and $P_n.C_n$ are equal to 1.

For the final sum and carry outputs of the nth stage, we get the following Boolean expressions.

$$S_n = P_n \oplus C_n \text{ where } P_n = A_n \oplus B_n$$
$$C_{on} = C_{n+1} = G_n + P_n C_n \text{ where } G_n = A_n \cdot B_n$$

Observe the recursive nature of the expression for the output carry at the nth stage which becomes the input carry for the (n+1)st stage .it is possible to express the output carry of a higher significant stage is the carry-out of the previous stage.

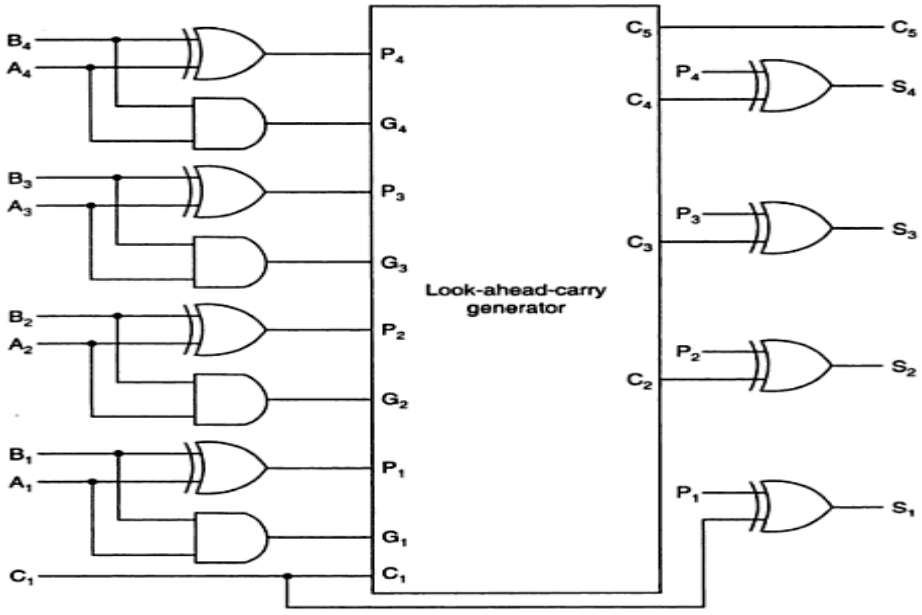
Based on these , the expression for the carry-outs of various full adders are as follows,

$$C_1 = G_0 + P_0 \cdot C_0$$
$$C_2 = G_1 + P_1 \cdot C_1 = G_1 + P_1 \cdot G_0 + P_1 \cdot P_0 \cdot C_0$$
$$C_3 = G_2 + P_2 \cdot C_2 = G_2 + P_2 \cdot G_1 + P_2 \cdot P_1 \cdot G_0 + P_2 \cdot P_1 \cdot P_0 \cdot C_0$$
$$C_4 = G_3 + P_3 \cdot C_3 = G_3 + P_3 \cdot G_2 + P_3 \cdot P_2 \cdot G_1 + P_3 \cdot P_2 \cdot P_1 \cdot G_0 + P_3 \cdot P_2 \cdot P_1 \cdot P_0 \cdot C_0$$

The general expression for n stages designated as 0 through $(n-1)$ would be

$$C_n = G_{n-1} + P_{n-1} \cdot C_{n-1} = G_{n-1} + P_{n-1} \cdot G_{n-2} + P_{n-1} \cdot P_{n-2} \cdot G_{n-3} + \ldots + P_{n-1} \cdot \ldots P_0 \cdot C_0$$

Observe that the final output carry is expressed as a function of the input variables in SOP form. Which is two level AND-OR or equivalent NAND-NAND form. Observe that the full look-ahead scheme requires the use of OR gate with (n+1) inputs and AND gates with number of inputs varying from 2 to (n+1).



Logic diagram of a 4-bit look-ahead-carry adder.

2's complement Addition and Subtraction using Parallel Adders:

Most modern computers use the 2's complement system to represent negative numbers and to perform subtraction operations of signed numbers can be performed using only the addition operation ,if we use the 2's complement form to represent negative numbers.

The circuit shown can perform both addition and subtraction in the 2's complement. This adder/subtractor circuit is controlled by the control signal ADD/SUB'. When the ADD/SUB' level is HIGH, the circuit performs the addition of the numbers stored in registers A and B. When the ADD/Sub' level is LOW, the circuit subtract the number in register B from the number in register A. The operation is:

When ADD/SUB' is a 1:

1. AND gates 1,3,5 and 7 are enabled , allowing B_0,B_1,$B_2$and B_3 to pass to the OR gates 9,10,11,12 . AND gates 2,4,6 and 8 are disabled , blocking B_0',B_1',B_2', and B_3' from reaching the OR gates 9,10,11 and 12.

2. The two levels B_0 to B_3 pass through the OR gates to the 4-bit parallel adder, to be added to the bits A_0 to A_3. The sum appears at the output S_0 to S_3

3. Add/SUB' =1 causes no carry into the adder.

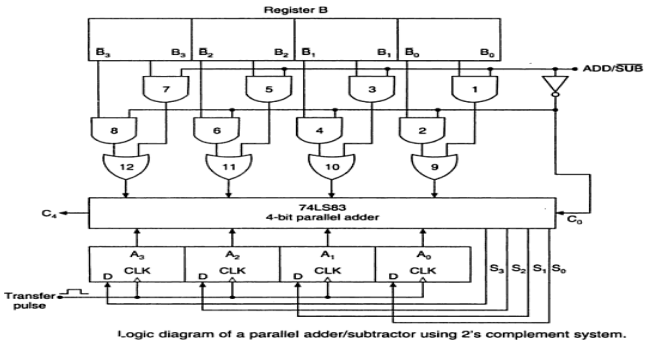
When ADD/SUB' is a 0:

1. AND gates 1,3,5 and 7 are disabled , allowing B_0,B_1,$B_2$and B_3 from reaching the OR gates 9,10,11,12 . AND gates 2,4,6 and 8 are enabled , blocking B_0',B_1',B_2', and B_3' from reaching the OR gates.

2. The two levels B_0‘ to B_3‘ pass through the OR gates to the 4-bit parallel adder, to be added to the bits A_0 to A_3.The C_0 is now 1.thus the number in register B is converted to its 2‘s complement form.

3. The difference appears at the output S_0 to S_3.

Adders/Subtractors used for adding and subtracting signed binary numbers. In computers , the output is transferred into the register A (accumulator) so that the result of the addition or subtraction always end up stored in the register A This is accomplished by applying a transfer pulse to the CLK inputs of register A.



Logic diagram of a parallel adder/subtractor using 2's complement system.

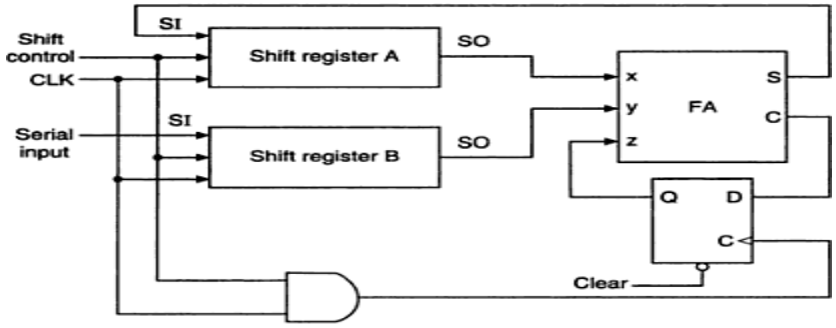
Serial Adder:

A serial adder is used to add binary numbers in serial form. The two binary numbers to be added serially are stored in two shift registers A and B. Bits are added one pair at a time through a single full adder (FA) circuit as shown. The carry out of the full-adder is transferred to a D flip-flop. The output of this flip-flop is then used as the carry input for the next pair of significant bits. The sum bit from the S output of the full-adder could be transferred to a third shift register. By shifting the sum into A while the bits of A are shifted out, it is possible to use one register for storing both augend and the sum bits. The serial input register B can be used to transfer a new binary number while the addend bits are shifted out during the addition.

The operation of the serial adder is:

Initially register A holds the augend, register B holds the addend and the carry flip-flop is cleared to 0. The outputs (SO) of A and B provide a pair of significant bits for the full-adder at x and y. The shift control enables both registers and carry flip-flop , so, at the clock pulse both registers are shifted once to the right, the sum bit from S enters the left most flip-flop of A , and the output carry is transferred into flip-flop Q . The shift control enables the registers for a number of clock pulses equal to the number of bits of the registers. For each succeeding clock pulse a new sum bit is transferred to A, a new carry is transferred to Q, and both registers are shifted once to the right. This process continues until the shift control is disabled. Thus the addition is accomplished by passing each pair of bits together with the previous carry through a single full adder circuit and transferring the sum, one bit at a time, into register A.

Initially, register A and the carry flip-flop are cleared to 0 and then the first number is added from B. While B is shifted through the full adder, a second number is transferred to it through its serial input. The second number is then added to the content of register A while a third number is transferred serially into register B. This can be repeated to form the addition of two, three, or more numbers and accumulate their sum in register A.



Logic diagram of a serial adder.

Difference between Serial and Parallel Adders:

The parallel adder registers with parallel load, whereas the serial adder uses shift registers. The number of full adder circuits in the parallel adder is equal to the number of bits in the binary numbers, whereas the serial adder requires only one full adder circuit and a carry flip- flop. Excluding the registers, the parallel adder is a combinational circuit, whereas the serial adder is a sequential circuit. The sequential circuit in the serial adder consists of a full-adder and a flip-flop that stores the output carry.

BCD Adder:

The BCD addition process:

1. Add the 4-bit BCD code groups for each decimal digit position using ordinary binary addition.

2. For those positions where the sum is 9 or less, the sum is in proper BCD form and no correction is needed.

3. When the sum of two digits is greater than 9, a correction of 0110 should be added to that sum, to produce the proper BCD result. This will produce a carry to be added to the next decimal position.

A BCD adder circuit must be able to operate in accordance with the above steps. In other words, the circuit must be able to do the following:

1. Add two 4-bit BCD code groups, using straight binaryaddition.

2. Determine, if the sum of this addition is greater than 1101 (decimal 9); if it is , add 0110 (decimal 6) to this sum and generate a carry to the next decimalposition.

The first requirement is easily met by using a 4- bit binary parallel adder such as the 74LS83 IC .For example , if the two BCD code groups $A_3A_2A_1A_0$and $B_3B_2B_1B_0$ are applied to a 4-bit parallel adder, the adder will output $S_4S_3S_2S_1S_0$, where S_4 is actually C_4 , the carry –out of the MSB bits.

The sum outputs $S_4S_3S_2S_1S_0$ can range anywhere from 00000 to 100109when both the BCD code groups are 1001=9). The circuitry for a BCD adder must include the logic needed to detect whenever the sum is greater than 01001, so that the correction can be added in. Those cases , where the sum is greater than 1001 are listed as:

S_4	S_3	S_2	S_1	S_0	Decimal number
0	1	0	1	0	10
0	1	0	1	1	11
0	1	1	0	0	12
0	1	1	0	1	13
0	1	1	1	0	14
0	1	1	1	1	15
1	0	0	0	0	16
1	0	0	0	1	17
1	0	0	1	0	18

Let us define a logic output X that will go HIGH only when the sum is greater than 01001 (i.e, for the cases in table). If examine these cases ,see that X will be HIGH for either of the following conditions:

1. Whenever S_4 =1(sum greater than 15)

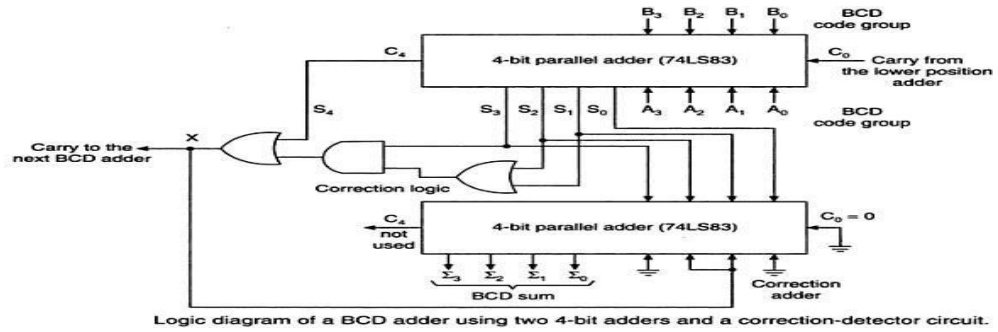
2. Whenever S_3 =1 and either S_2 or S_1 or both are 1 (sum 10 to 15)

This condition can be expressed as

$$X=S_4+S_3(S_2+S_1)$$

Whenever X=1, it is necessary to add the correction factor 0110 to the sum bits, and to generate a carry. The circuit consists of three basic parts. The two BCD code groups $A_3A_2A_1A_0$ and $B_3B_2B_1B_0$ are added together in the upper 4-bit adder, to produce the sum $S_4S_3S_2S_1S_0$. The logic gates shown implement the expression for X. The lower 4-bit adder will add the correction 0110 to the sum bits, only when X=1, producing the final BCD sum output represented by $\sum_3\sum_2\sum_1\sum_0$. The X is also the carry-out that is produced when the sum is greater than01001. When X=0, there is no carry and no addition of 0110. In such cases, $\sum_3\sum_2\sum_1\sum_0= S_3S_2S_1S_0$.

Two or more BCD adders can be connected in cascade when two or more digit decimal numbers are to be added. The carry-out of the first BCD adder is connected as the carry-in of the second BCD adder, the carry-out of the second BCD adder is connected as the carry-in of the third BCD adder and so on.



Logic diagram of a BCD adder using two 4-bit adders and a correction-detector circuit.

EXCESS-3(XS-3) ADDER:

To perform Excess-3 additions,

1. Add two xs-3 code groups
2. If carry=1, add 0011(3) to the sum of those two code groups
   If carry =0, subtract 0011(3) i.e., add 1101 (13 in decimal) to the sum of those two code groups.
   Ex: Add 9 and 5

	1100	9 in Xs-3
	+1000	5 in xs-3

1	0100	there is a carry
+0011	0011	add 3 to each group
-------	-------	
0100	0111	14 in xs-3
(1)	(4)	

EX:

(b)	0 1 1 1	4 in XS-3
	+ 0 1 1 0	3 in XS-3
	1 1 0 1	no carry
	+ 1 1 0 1	Subtract 3 (i.e. add 13)
Ignore carry	1 1 0 1 0	7 in XS-3
	(7)	

Implementation of xs-3 adder using 4-bit binary adders is shown. The augend ($A_3 A_2 A_1 A_0$) and addend ($B_3 B_2 B_1 B_0$) in xs-3 are added using the 4-bit parallel adder. If the carry is a 1, then 0011(3) is added to the sum bits $S_3 S_2 S_1 S_0$ of the upper adder in the lower 4-bit parallel

adder. If the carry is a 0, then 1101(3) is added to the sum bits (This is equivalent to subtracting 0011(3) from the sum bits. The correct sum in xs-3 is obtained

Excess-3 (XS-3) Subtractor:

To perform Excess-3 subtraction,

1. Complement the subtrahend
2. Add the complemented subtrahend to the minuend.
3. If carry =1, result is positive. Add 3 and end around carry to the result . If carry=0, the result is negative. Subtract 3, i.e, and take the 1‘s complement of the result.

```
Ex:   Perform 9-4
       1100          9 in xs-3
      +1000          Complement of 4 n Xs-3
      ----------------
(1)    0100          There is a carry
       +0011         Add 0011(3)
      ----------------
       0111
            1        End around carry
      ----------------
       1000          5 in xs-3
```

The minuend and the 1‘s complement of the subtrahend in xs-3 are added in the upper 4-bit parallel adder. If the carry-out from the upper adder is a 0, then 1101 is added to the sum bits of the upper adder in the lower adder and the sum bits of the lower adder are complemented to get the result. If the carry-out from the upper adder is a 1, then 3=0011 is added to the sum bits of the lower adder and the sum bits of the lower adder give the result.

Binary Multipliers:

In binary multiplication by the paper and pencil method, is modified somewhat in digital machines because a binary adder can add only two binary numbers at a time.
In a binary multiplier, instead of adding all the partial products at the end, they are added two at a time and their sum accumulated in a register (the accumulator register). In addition, when the multiplier bit is a 0,0s are not written down and added because it does not affect the final result. Instead, the multiplicand is shifted left by one bit.

The multiplication of 1110 by 1001 using this process is

Multiplicand 1110

Multiplier	1001	
	1110	The LSB of the multiplier is a 1; write down the multiplicand; shift the multiplicand one position to the left (1 1 1 0 0)
	1110	The second multiplier bit is a 0; write down the previous result 1110; shift the multiplicand to the left again (1 1 1 0 0 0)

+1110000 The fourth multiplier bit is a 1 write down the new multiplicand add it to the first partial product to obtain the final product.

1111110

This multiplication process can be performed by the serial multiplier circuit , which multiplies two 4-bit numbers to produce an 8-bit product. The circuit consists of following elements

X register: A 4-bit shift register that stores the multiplier --- it will shift right on the falling edge of the clock. Note that 0s are shifted in from the left.

B register: An 8-bit register that stores the multiplicand; it will shift left on the falling edge of the clock. Note that 0s are shifted in from the right.

A register: An 8-bit register, i.e, the accumulator that accumulates the partial products.

Adder: An 8-bit parallel adder that produces the sum of A and B registers. The adder outputs S_7 through S_0 are connected to the D inputs of the accumulator so that the sum can be transferred to the accumulator only when a clock pulse gets through the AND gate.

The circuit operation can be described by going through each step in the multiplication of 1110 by 1001. The complete process requires 4 clock cycles.

1. **Before the first clock pulse***:* Prior to the occurrence of the first clock pulse, the register A is loaded with 00000000, the register B with the multiplicand 00001110, and the register X with the multiplier 1001. Assume that each of these registers is loaded using its asynchronous inputs(i.e., PRESET and CLEAR). The output of the adder will be the sum of A and B,i.e., 00001110.
2. **First Clock pulse***:*Since the LSB of the multiplier (X_0) is a 1, the first clock pulse gets through the AND gate and its positive going transition transfers the sum outputs into the accumulator. The subsequent negative going transition causes the X and B registers to shift right and left, respectively. This produces a new sum of A and B.
3. **Second Clock Pulse:** The second bit of the original multiplier is now in X_0 . Since this bit is a 0, the second clock pulse is inhibited from reaching the accumulator. Thus, the sum outputs are not transferred into the accumulator and the number in the accumulator does not change. The negative going transition of the clock pulse will again shift the X and B registers. Again a new sum is produced.
4. **Third Clock Pulse**:The third bit of the original multiplier is now in X_0;since this bit is a 0, the third clock pulse is inhibited from reaching the accumulator. Thus, the sum outputs are not transferred into the accumulator and the number in the accumulator does not change. The negative going transition of the clock pulse will again shift the X and B registers. Again a new sum is produced.
5. **Fourth Clock Pulse:** The last bit of the original multiplier is now in X_0 , and since it is a 1, the positive going transition of the fourth pulse transfers the sum into the accumulator. The accumulator now holds the final product. The negative going transition of the clock pulse shifts X and B again. Note that, X is now 0000, since all the multiplier bits have been shifted out.

Code converters:

The availability of a large variety of codes for the same discrete elements of information results in the use of different codes by different digital systems. It is sometimes necessary to use the output of one system as the input to another. A conversion circuit must be inserted between the two systems if each uses different codes for the same information. Thus a

code converter is a logic circuit whose inputs are bit patterns representing numbers (or character) in one cod and whose outputs are the corresponding representation in a different code. Code converters are usually multiple output circuits.

To convert from binary code A to binary code B, the input lines must supply the bit combination of elements as specified by code A and the output lines must generate the corresponding bit combination of code B. A combinational circuit performs this transformation by means of logic gates.

For example, a binary –to-gray code converter has four binary input lines B_4, B_3,B_2,B_1 and four gray code output lines G_4,G_3,G_2,G_1. When the input is 0010, for instance, the output should be 0011 and so forth. To design a code converter, we use a code table treating it as a truth table to express each output as a Boolean algebraic function of all the inputs.

In this example, of binary –to-gray code conversion, we can treat the binary to the gray code table as four truth tables to derive expressions for G_4, G3, G2, and G1. Each of these four expressions would, in general, contain all the four input variables B_4, B3,B_2,and B1. Thus,this code converter is actually equivalent to four logic circuits, one for each of the truth tables.

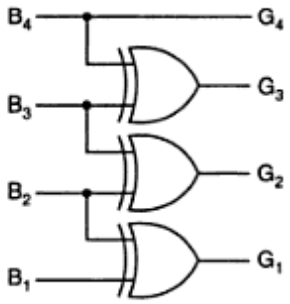
The logic expression derived for the code converter can be simplified using the usual techniques, including ‗don't cares' if present. Even if the input is an unweighted code, the same cell numbering method which we used earlier can be used, but the cell numbers --must correspond to the input combinations as if they were an 8-4-2-1 weighted code. s

Design of a 4-bit binary to gray code converter:

$$G_4 = \Sigma m(8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15) \qquad G_4 = B_4$$
$$G_3 = \Sigma m(4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11) \qquad G_3 = \bar{B}_4B_3 + B_4\bar{B}_3 = B_4 \oplus B_3$$
$$G_2 = \Sigma m(2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 11, 12, 13) \qquad G_2 = \bar{B}_3B_2 + B_3\bar{B}_2 = B_3 \oplus B_2$$
$$G_1 = \Sigma m(1, 2, 5, 6, 9, 10, 13, 14) \qquad G_1 = \bar{B}_2B_1 + B_2\bar{B}_1 = B_2 \oplus B_1$$

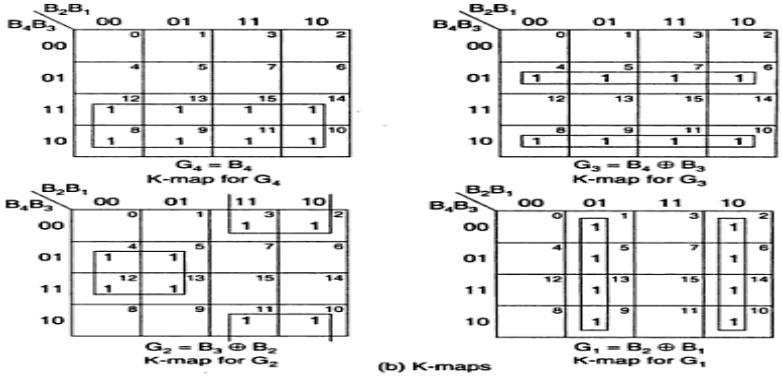
4-bit binary				4-bit Gray			
B_4	B_3	B_2	B_1	G_4	G_3	G_2	G_1
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0
0	1	0	1	0	1	1	1
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1
0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1
1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0

(a) Conversion table



(c) Logic diagram

4-bit binary-to-Gray code converter



(b) K-maps

4-bit binary-to-Gray code converter.

Design of a 4-bit gray to Binary code converter:

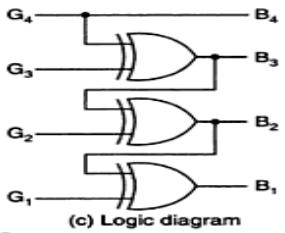
$$B_4 = \Sigma\, m(12, 13, 15, 14, 10, 11, 9, 8) = \Sigma\, m(8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$$
$$B_3 = \Sigma\, m(6, 7, 5, 4, 10, 11, 9, 8) = \Sigma\, m(4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11)$$
$$B_2 = \Sigma\, m(3, 2, 5, 4, 15, 14, 9, 8) = \Sigma\, m(2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, 14, 15)$$
$$B_1 = \Sigma\, m(1, 2, 7, 4, 13, 14, 11, 8) = \Sigma\, m(1, 2, 4, 7, 8, 11, 13, 14)$$

$$B_4 = G_4$$
$$B_3 = \bar{G}_4 G_3 + G_4 \bar{G}_3 = G_4 \oplus G_3$$
$$B_2 = \bar{G}_4 G_3 \bar{G}_2 + \bar{G}_4 \bar{G}_3 G_2 + G_4 \bar{G}_3 \bar{G}_2 + G_4 G_3 G_2$$
$$= \bar{G}_4 (G_3 \oplus G_2) + G_4 (\overline{G_3 \oplus G_2}) = G_4 \oplus G_3 \oplus G_2 = B_3 \oplus G_2$$
$$B_1 = \bar{G}_4 \bar{G}_3 \bar{G}_2 G_1 + \bar{G}_4 \bar{G}_3 G_2 \bar{G}_1 + \bar{G}_4 G_3 G_2 G_1 + \bar{G}_4 G_3 \bar{G}_2 \bar{G}_1 + G_4 G_3 \bar{G}_2 G_1 + G_4 G_3 G_2 \bar{G}_1 + G_4 \bar{G}_3 G_2 G_1 + G_4 \bar{G}_3 \bar{G}_2 \bar{G}_1$$

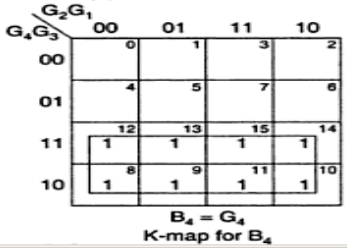
$$= \bar{G}_4 \bar{G}_3 (G_2 \oplus G_1) + G_4 G_3 (G_2 \oplus G_1) + \bar{G}_4 G_3 (\overline{G_2 \oplus G_1}) + G_4 \bar{G}_3 (\overline{G_2 \oplus G_1})$$
$$= (G_2 \oplus G_1)(\overline{G_4 \oplus G_3}) + (\overline{G_2 \oplus G_1})(G_4 \oplus G_3)$$
$$= G_4 \oplus G_3 \oplus G_2 \oplus G_1$$

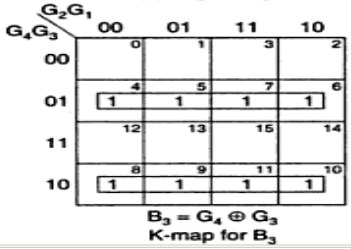
4-bit Gray				4-bit binary			
G_4	G_3	G_2	G_1	B_4	B_3	B_2	B_1
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0
0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1
0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0
1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	1	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1
1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1

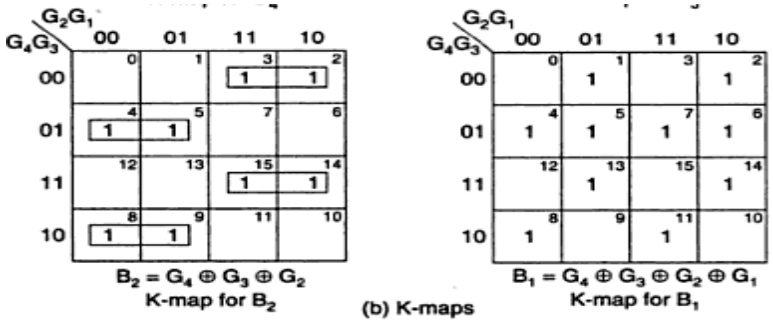
(a) Conversion table



(c) Logic diagram







(b) K-maps

4-bit Gray-to-binary code converter.

Design of a 4-bit BCD to XS-3 code converter:

8421 code				XS-3 code			
B_4	B_3	B_2	B_1	X_4	X_3	X_2	X_1
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0
0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
0	0	1	1	0	1	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	0	1	1
1	0	0	1	1	1	0	0

(a) Conversion table

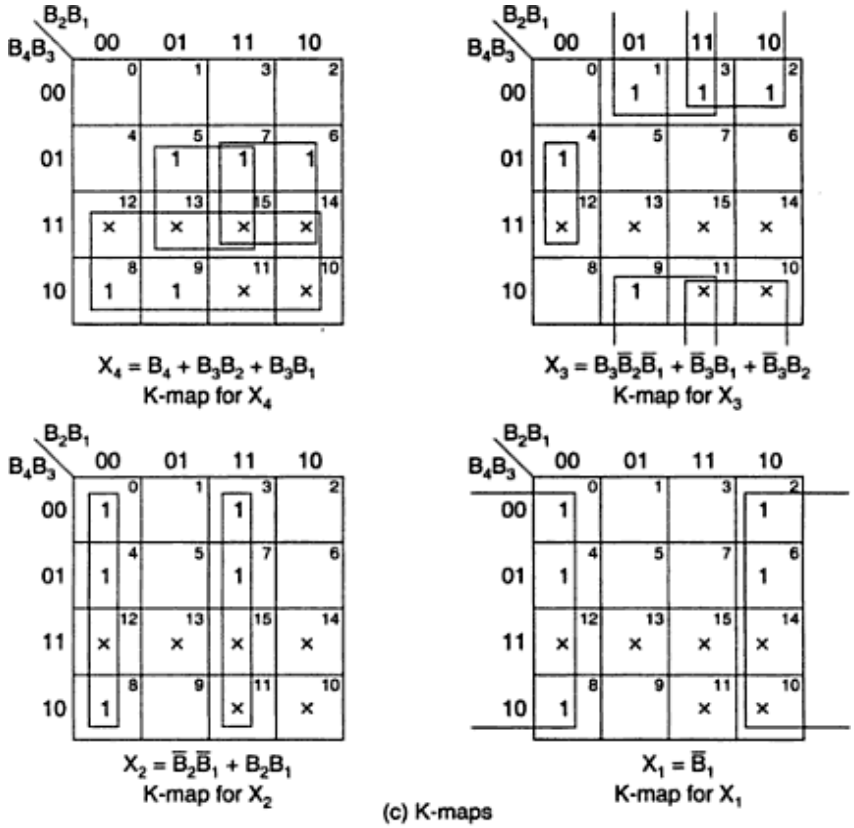
$X_4 = \Sigma\, m(5, 6, 7, 8, 9) + d(10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$
$X_3 = \Sigma\, m(1, 2, 3, 4, 9) + d(10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$
$X_2 = \Sigma\, m(0, 3, 4, 7, 8) + d(10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$
$X_1 = \Sigma\, m(0, 2, 4, 6, 8) + d(10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15)$

The minimal expressions are

$X_4 = B_4 + B_3B_2 + B_3B_1$
$X_3 = B_3\overline{B}_2\overline{B}_1 + \overline{B}_3B_1 + \overline{B}_3B_2$
$X_2 = \overline{B}_2\overline{B}_1 + B_2B_1$
$X_1 = \overline{B}_1$

(b) Minimal expressions

4-bit BCD-to-XS-3 code converter



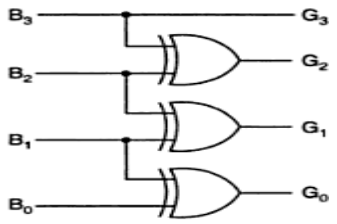
(c) K-maps

4-bit BCD-to-XS-3 code converter.

Design of a BCD to gray code converter:

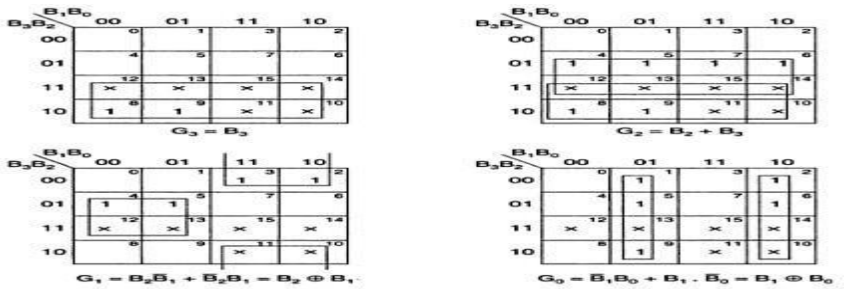
BCD code				Gray code			
B_3	B_2	B_1	B_0	G_3	G_2	G_1	G_0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0
0	1	0	1	0	1	1	1
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1
0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0
1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1

(a) BCD-to-Gray code conversion table



(b) Logic diagram

BCD-to-Gray code converter.

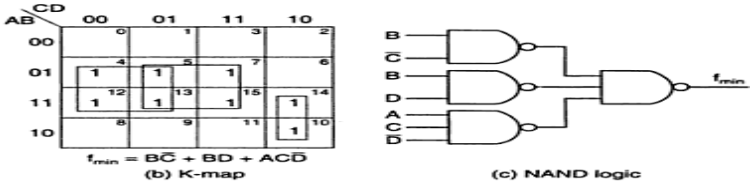


K-maps for a BCD-to-Gray code converter.

Design of a SOP circuit to Detect the Decimal numbers 5 through 12 in a 4-bit gray code Input:

Decimal number	4-bit Gray code A	B	C	D	Output f
0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1	0
2	0	0	1	1	0
3	0	0	1	0	0
4	0	1	1	0	0
5	0	1	1	1	1
6	0	1	0	1	1
7	0	1	0	0	1
8	1	1	0	0	1
9	1	1	0	1	1
10	1	1	1	1	1
11	1	1	1	0	1
12	1	0	1	0	1
13	1	0	1	1	0
14	1	0	0	1	0
15	1	0	0	0	0

(a) Truth table



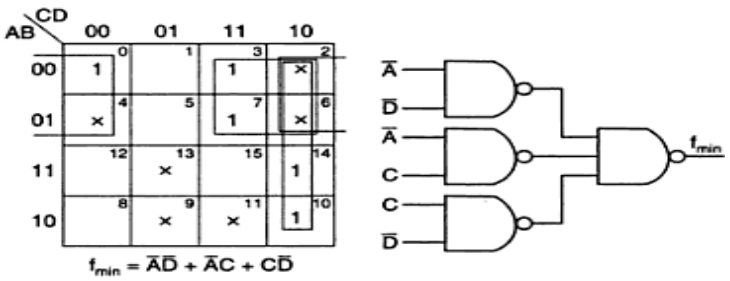
(b) K-map (c) NAND logic

Truth table, K-map and logic diagram for the SOP circuit.

Design of a SOP circuit to detect the decimal numbers 0,2,4,6,8 in a 4-bit 5211 BCD code input:

Decimal number	5211 code A	B	C	D	Output f
0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	1	0
2	0	0	1	1	1
3	0	1	0	1	0
4	0	1	1	1	1
5	1	0	0	0	0
6	1	0	1	0	1
7	1	1	0	0	0
8	1	1	1	0	1
9	1	1	1	1	0

(a) Truth table



(b) K-map (c) Logic diagram

Truth table, K-map and logic diagram for the SOP circuit.

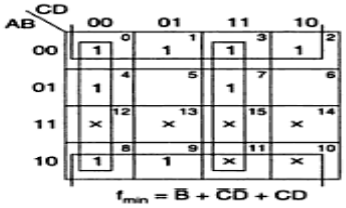
Design of a Combinational circuit to produce the 2's complement of a 4-bit binary number:

Input				Output			
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1
0	0	1	0	1	1	1	0
0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1
0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0
0	1	0	1	1	0	1	1
0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
1	0	0	1	0	1	1	1
1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0
1	0	1	1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0
1	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	0	1

(a) Conversion table

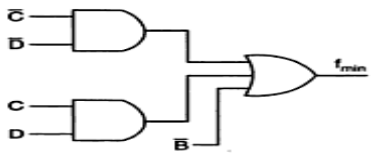
Conversion table and K-maps for the circuit

(a) Seven-segment display



$f_{min} = \bar{B} + \bar{C}\bar{D} + CD$

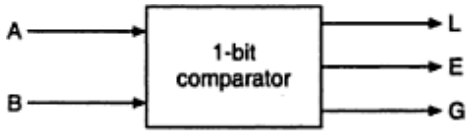
(b) K-map



(c) Logic diagram

Comparators:

$$EQUALITY = (A_3 \odot B_3)(A_2 \odot B_2)(A_1 \odot B_1)(A_0 \odot B_0)$$



Block diagram of a 1-bit comparator.

1. Magnitude Comparator:

The logic for a 1-bit magnitude comparator: Let the 1-bit numbers be $A = A_0$ and $B = B_0$.
If $A_0 = 1$ and $B_0 = 0$, then $A > B$.
Therefore,

$$A > B: G = A_0\overline{B}_0$$

If $A_0 = 0$ and $B_0 = 1$, then $A < B$.
Therefore,

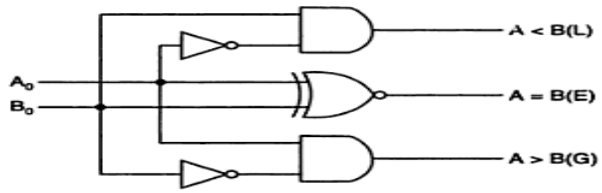
$$A < B: L = \overline{A}_0 B_0$$

If A_0 and B_0 coincide, i.e. $A_0 = B_0 = 0$ or if $A_0 = B_0 = 1$, then $A = B$.
Therefore,

$$A = B : E = A_0 \odot B_0$$

A_0	B_0	L	E	G
0	0	0	1	0
0	1	1	0	0
1	0	0	0	1
1	1	0	1	0

(a) Truth table



(b) Logic diagram

1-bit comparator.

1- bit Magnitude Comparator:

The logic for a 2-bit magnitude comparator: Let the two 2-bit numbers be $A = A_1 A_0$ and $B = B_1 B_0$.

1. If $A_1 = 1$ and $B_1 = 0$, then $A > B$ or
2. If A_1 and B_1 coincide and $A_0 = 1$ and $B_0 = 0$, then $A > B$. So the logic expression for $A > B$ is

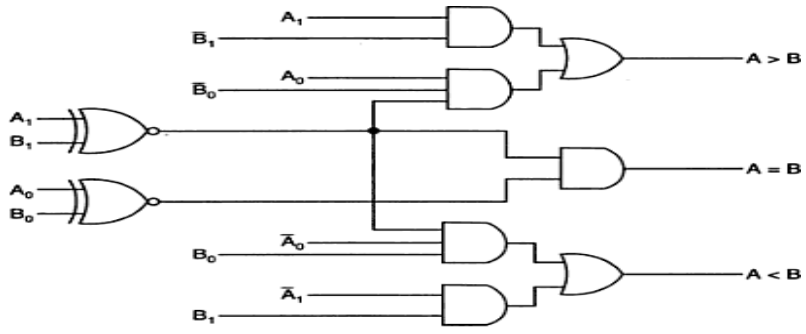
$$A > B : G = A_1\overline{B}_1 + (A_1 \odot B_1)A_0\overline{B}_0$$

1. If $A_1 = 0$ and $B_1 = 1$, then $A < B$ or
2. If A_1 and B_1 coincide and $A_0 = 0$ and $B_0 = 1$, then $A < B$. So the expression for $A < B$ is

$$A < B : L = \overline{A}_1 B_1 + (A_1 \odot B_1)\overline{A}_0 B_0$$

If A_1 and B_1 coincide and if A_0 and B_0 coincide then $A = B$. So the expression for $A = B$ is

$$A = B : E = (A_1 \odot B_1)(A_0 \odot B_0)$$



Logic diagram of a 2-bit magnitude comparator.

4-Bit Magnitude Comparator:

The logic for a 4-bit magnitude comparator: Let the two 4-bit numbers be $A = A_3A_2A_1A_0$ and $B = B_3B_2B_1B_0$.

1. If $A_3 = 1$ and $B_3 = 0$, then $A > B$. Or
2. If A_3 and B_3 coincide, and if $A_2 = 1$ and $B_2 = 0$, then $A > B$. Or
3. If A_3 and B_3 coincide, and if A_2 and B_2 coincide, and if $A_1 = 1$ and $B_1 = 0$, then $A > B$. Or
4. If A_3 and B_3 coincide, and if A_2 and B_2 coincide, and if A_1 and B_1 coincide, and if $A_0 = 1$ and $B_0 = 0$, then $A > B$.

From these statements, we see that the logic expression for $A > B$ can be written as

$$(A > B) = A_3\overline{B}_3 + (A_3 \odot B_3)A_2\overline{B}_2 + (A_3 \odot B_3)(A_2 \odot B_2)A_1\overline{B}_1 + (A_3 \odot B_3)(A_2 \odot B_2)(A_1 \odot B_1)A_0\overline{B}_0$$

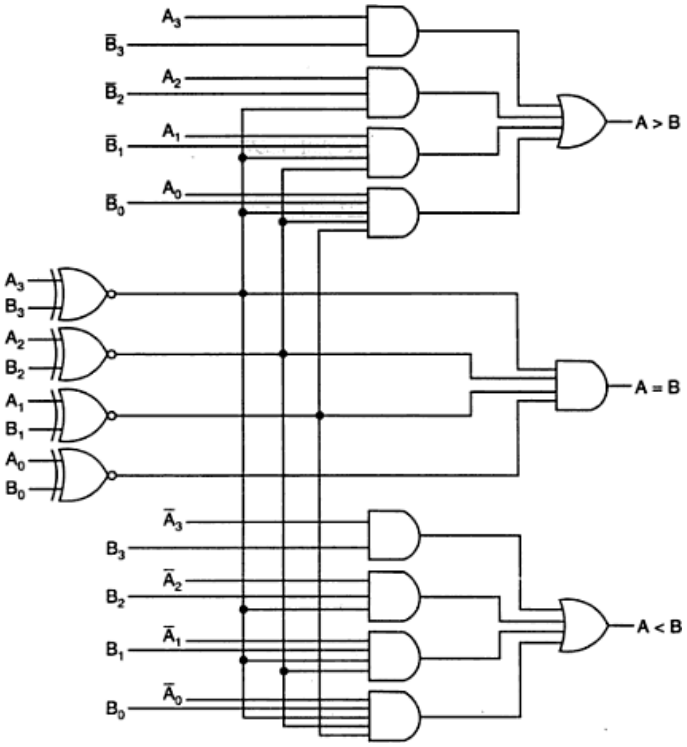
Similarly, the logic expression for $A < B$ can be written as

$$A < B = \overline{A}_3B_3 + (A_3 \odot B_3)\overline{A}_2B_2 + (A_3 \odot B_3)(A_2 \odot B_2)\overline{A}_1B_1 + (A_3 \odot B_3)(A_2 \odot B_2)(A_1 \odot B_1)\overline{A}_0B_0$$

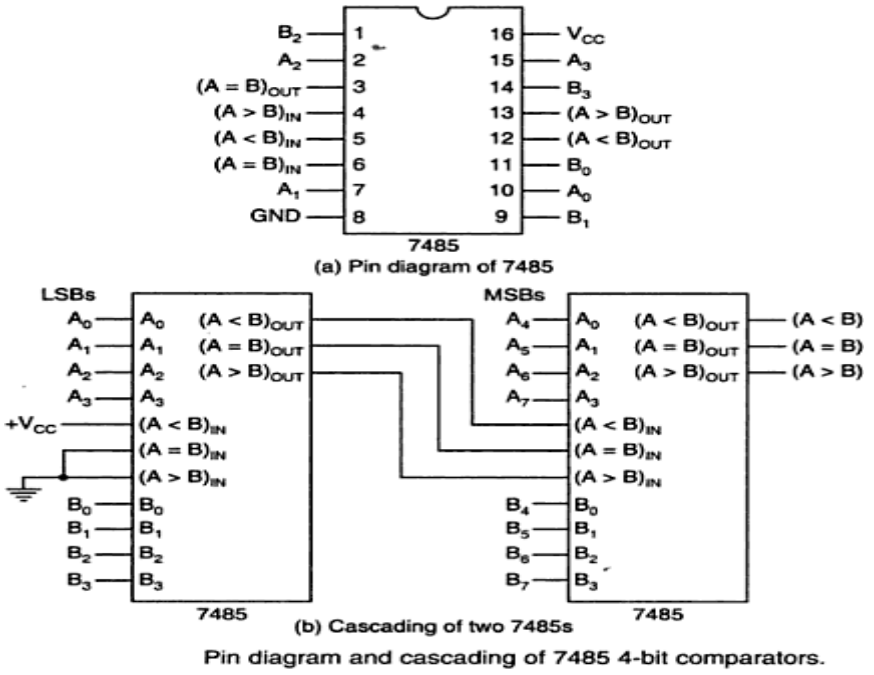
If A_3 and B_3 coincide and if A_2 and B_2 coincide and if A_1 and B_1 coincide and if A_0 and B_0 coincide, then $A = B$.

So the expression for $A = B$ can be written as

$$(A = B) = (A_3 \odot B_3)(A_2 \odot B_2)(A_1 \odot B_1)(A_0 \odot B_0)$$

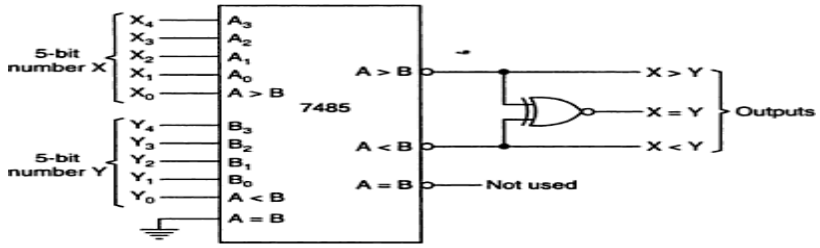


IC Comparator:

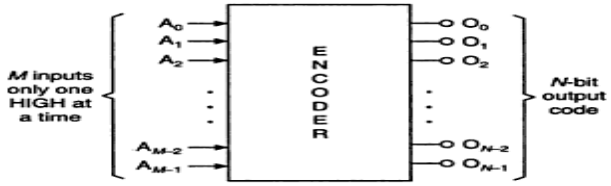


Pin diagram and cascading of 7485 4-bit comparators.

ENCODERS:



Use of 7485 as a 5-bit comparator.

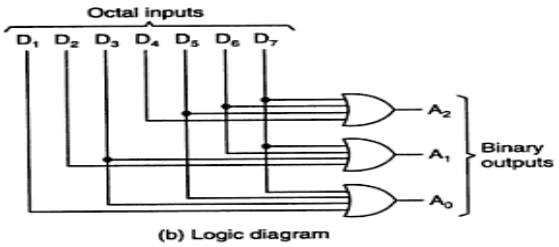


Block diagram of encoder.

Octal to Binary Encoder:

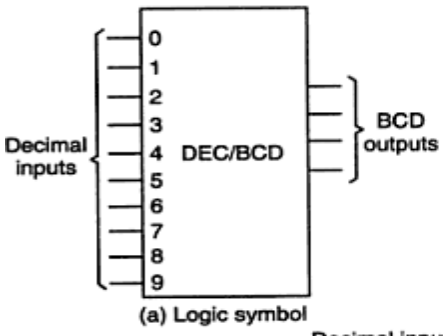
Octal digits		Binary		
		A_2	A_1	A_0
D_0	0	0	0	0
D_1	1	0	0	1
D_2	2	0	1	0
D_3	3	0	1	1
D_4	4	1	0	0
D_5	5	1	0	1
D_6	6	1	1	0
D_7	7	1	1	1

(a) Truth table



Octal-to-binary encoder.

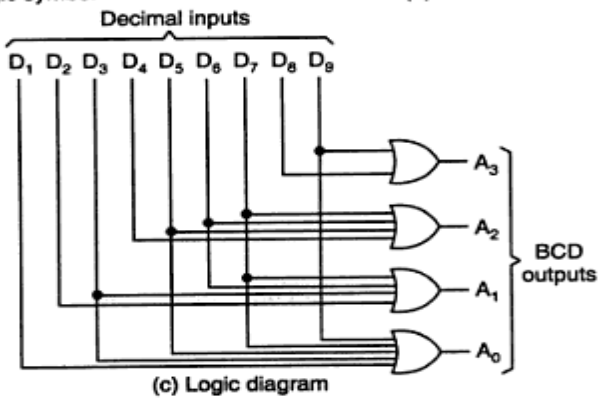
Decimal to BCD Encoder:



(a) Logic symbol

Decimal inputs		Binary			
		A_3	A_2	A_1	A_0
D_0	0	0	0	0	0
D_1	1	0	0	0	1
D_2	2	0	0	1	0
D_3	3	0	0	1	1
D_4	4	0	1	0	0
D_5	5	0	1	0	1
D_6	6	0	1	1	0
D_7	7	0	1	1	1
D_8	8	1	0	0	0
D_9	9	1	0	0	1

(b) Truth table



(c) Logic diagram

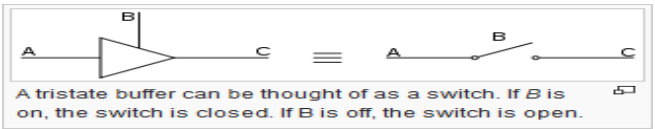
Decimal-to-BCD encoder.

Tristate bus system:

In digital electronics**three-state**, **tri-state**, or **3-state**logic allows an output port to assume a high impedance state in addition to the 0 and 1 logic levels, effectively removing the output from the circuit.

This allows multiple circuits to share the same output line or lines (such as a bus which cannot listen to more than one device at a time).

Three-state outputs are implemented in many registers, bus drivers, and flip-flops in the 7400 and 4000 series as well as in other types, but also internally in many integrated circuits. Other typical uses are internal and external buses in microprocessors, computer memory, and peripherals. Many devices are controlled by an active-low input called OE (Output Enable) which dictates whether the outputs should be held in a high-impedance state or drive their respective loads (to either 0- or 1-level).



A tristate buffer can be thought of as a switch. If *B* is on, the switch is closed. If B is off, the switch is open.

INPUT		OUTPUT
A	B	C
0	1	0
1		1
X	0	Z (high impedance)

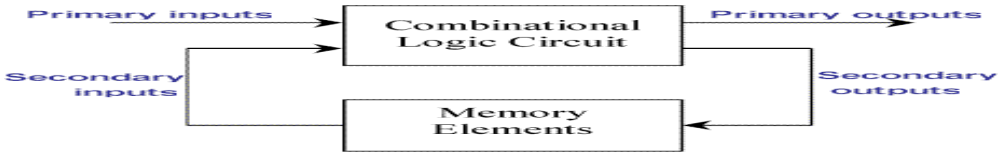
MODULE IV
Sequential Logic Circuits - I

Sequential circuits

Classification of sequential circuits: Sequential circuits may be classified as two types.

1. Synchronous sequential circuits
2. Asynchronous sequential circuits

Combinational logic refers to circuits whose output is strictly depended on the present value of the inputs. As soon as inputs are changed, the information about the previous inputs is lost, that is, combinational logics circuits have no memory. Although every digital system is likely to have combinational circuits, most systems encountered in practice also include memory elements, which require that the system be described in terms of sequential logic. Circuits whose output depends not only on the present input value but also the past input value are known as **sequential logic circuits**. The mathematical model of a sequential circuit is usually referred to as a **sequential machine**.



Comparison between combinational and sequential circuits

Combinational circuit	Sequential circuit
1. In combinational circuits, the output variables at any instant of time are dependent only on the present input variables	1. in sequential circuits the output variables at any instant of time are dependent not only on the present input variables, but also on the present state
2.memory unit is not requires in combinational circuit	2.memory unit is required to store the past history of the input variables
3. these circuits are faster because the delay between the i/p and o/p due to propagation delay of gates only	3. sequential circuits are slower than combinational circuits
4. easy to design	4. comparatively hard to design

Level mode and pulse mode asynchronous sequential circuits:

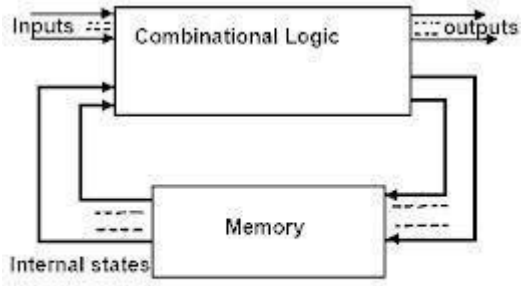


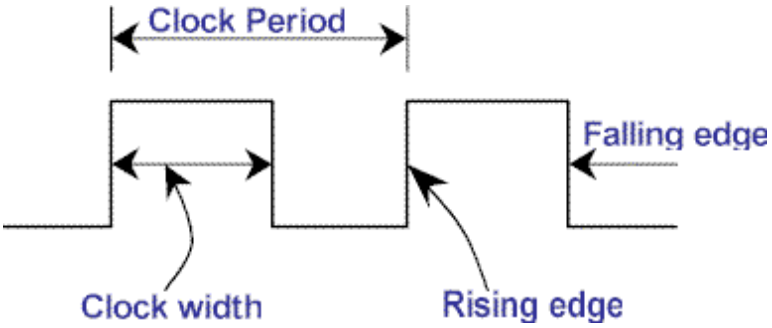
Figure 1: Asynchronous Sequential Circuit

Fig shows a block diagram of an asynchronous sequential circuit. It consists of a combinational circuit and delay elements connected to form the feedbackloops. The present state and next state variables in asynchronous sequential circuits called secondary variables and excitation variables respectively..

There are two types of asynchronous circuits: fundamental mode circuits and pulse mode circuits.

Synchronous and Asynchronous Operation:

Sequential circuits are divided into two main types: **synchronous** and **asynchronous**. Their classification depends on the timing of their signals.***Synchronous*** sequential circuits change their states and output values at discrete instants of time, which are specified by the rising and falling edge of a free-running **clock signal**. The clock signal is generally some form of square wave as shown in Figure below.



From the diagram you can see that the **clock period** is the time between successive transitions in the same direction, that is, between two rising or two falling edges. State transitions in synchronous sequential circuits are made to take place at times when the clock is making a transition from 0 to 1 (rising edge) or from 1 to 0 (falling edge). Between successive clock pulses there is no change in the information stored in memory.

The reciprocal of the clock period is referred to as the **clock frequency**. The **clock width** is defined as the time during which the value of the clock signal is equal to 1. The ratio of the clock width and clock period is referred to as the duty cycle. A clock signal is said to

be **active high** if the state changes occur at the clock's rising edge or during the clock width. Otherwise, the clock is said to be **active low**. Synchronous sequential circuits are also known as **clocked sequential circuits**.

The memory elements used in synchronous sequential circuits are usually flip-flops. These circuits are binary cells capable of storing one bit of information. A flip-flop circuit has two outputs, one for the normal value and one for the complement value of the bit stored in it. Binary information can enter a flip-flop in a variety of ways, a fact which give rise to the different types of flip-flops. For information on the different types of basic flip-flop circuits and their logical properties, see the previous tutorial on flip-flops.

In ***asynchronous*** sequential circuits, the transition from one state to another is initiated by the change in the primary inputs; there is no external synchronization. The memory commonly used in asynchronous sequential circuits are time-delayed devices, usually implemented by feedback among logic gates. Thus, asynchronous sequential circuits may be regarded as combinational circuits with feedback. Because of the feedback among logic gates, asynchronous sequential circuits may, at times, become unstable due to transient conditions. The instability problem imposes many difficulties on the designer. Hence, they are not as commonly used as synchronous systems.

Fundamental Mode Circuits assumes that:

1. The input variables change only when the circuit is stable
2. Only one input variable can change at a given time
3. Inputs are levels are not pulses

A pulse mode circuit assumes that:

1. The input variables are pulses instead of levels
2. The width of the pulses is long enough for the circuit to respond to the input
3. The pulse width must not be so long that is still present after the new state is reached.

Latches and flip-flops

Latches and flip-flops are the basic elements for storing information. One latch or flip- flop can store one bit of information. The main difference between latches and flip-flops is that for latches, their outputs are constantly affected by their inputs as long as the enable signal is asserted. In other words, when they are enabled, their content changes immediately when their inputs change. Flip-flops, on the other hand, have their content change only either at the rising or falling edge of the enable signal. This enable signal is usually the controlling clock signal. After the rising or falling edge of the clock, the flip-flop content remains constant even if the input changes.

There are basically four main types of latches and flip-flops: SR, D, JK, and T. The major differences in these flip-flop types are the number of inputs they have and how they change state. For each type, there are also different variations that enhance their operations. In this chapter, we

will look at the operations of the various latches and flip-flops.the flip-flops has two outputs, labeled Q and Q‘. the Q output is the normal output of the flip flop and Q‘ is the inverted output.

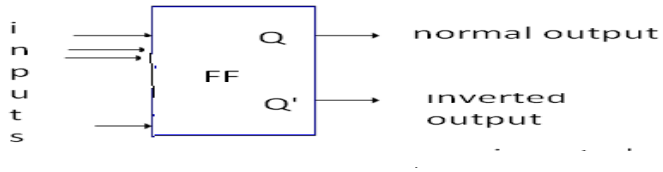


Figure: basic symbol of flipflop

A latch may be an active-high input latch or an active –LOW input latch.active –HIGH means that the SET and RESET inputs are normally resting in the low state and one of them will be pulsed high whenever we want to change latch outputs.

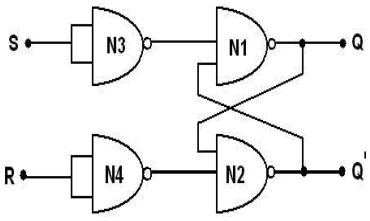
SR latch:

The latch has two outputs Q and Q‘. When the circuit is switched on the latch may enter into any state. If Q=1, then Q‘=0, which is called SET state. If Q=0, then Q‘=1, which is called RESET state. Whether the latch is in SET state or RESET state, it will continue to remain in the same state, as long as the power is not switched off. But the latch is not an useful circuit, since there is no way of entering the desired input. It is the fundamental building block in constructing flip-flops, as explained in the following sections

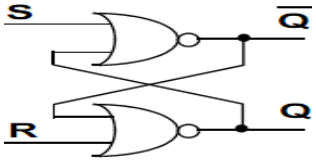
NAND latch

NAND latch is the fundamental building block in constructing a flip-flop. It has the property of holding on to any previous output, as long as it is not disturbed.

The opration of NAND latch is the reverse of the operation of NOR latch.if 0‘s are replaced by 1‘s and 1‘s are replaced by 0‘s we get the same truth table as that of the NOR latch shown



NOR latch



S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$	Function
0	0	Q^+	$\overline{Q}^+$	Storage State
0	1	0	1	Reset
1	0	1	0	Set
1	1	0-?	0-?	Indeterminate State

The analysis of the operation of the active-HIGHNOR latch can be summarized as follows.

1. SET=0, RESET=0: this is normal resting state of the NOR latch and it has no effect on the output state. Q and Q‘ will remain in whatever stste they were prior to the occurrence of this input condition.
2. SET=1, RESET=0: this will always set Q=1, where it will remain even after SET returns to 0
3. SET=0, RESET=1: this will always reset Q=0, where it will remain even after RESET returns to 0
4. SET=1,RESET=1; this condition tries to SET and RESET the latch at the same time, and it produces Q=Q‘=0. If the inputs are returned to zero simultaneously, the resulting output stste is erratic and unpredictable. This input condition should not be used.

   The SET and RESET inputs are normally in the LOW state and one of them will be pulsed HIGH. Whenever we want to change the latch outputs..

RS Flip-flop:

The basic flip-flop is a one bit memory cell that gives the fundamental idea of memory device. It constructed using two NAND gates. The two NAND gates N1 andN2 are connected such that, output of N1 is connected to input of N2 and output of N2 to input of N1. These form the feedback path the inputs are S and R, and outputs are Q and Q‘. The logic diagram and the block diagram of R-S flip-flop with clocked input

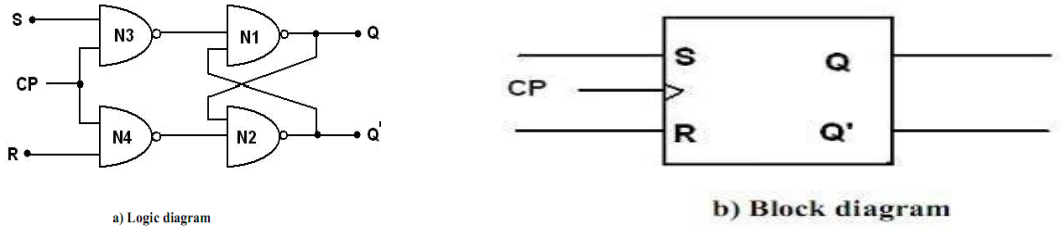


Figure: RS Flip-flop

The flip-flop can be made to respond only during the occurrence of clock pulse by adding two NAND gates to the input latch. So synchronization is achieved. i.e., flip-flops are allowed to change their states only at particular instant of time. The clock pulses are generated by a clock pulse generator. The flip-flops are affected only with the arrival of clock pulse**.**

Operation:

1. When CP=0 the output of N3 and N4 are 1 regardless of the value of S and R. This is given as input to N1 and N2. This makes the previous value of Q and Q‘unchanged.

2. When CP=1 the information at S and R inputs are allowed to reach the latch and change of state in flip-flop takes place.

3. CP=1, S=1, R=0 gives the SET state i.e., Q=1, Q‘=0.

4. CP=1, S=0, R=1 gives the RESET state i.e., Q=0, Q‘=1.

5. CP=1, S=0, R=0 does not affect the state of flip-flop.

6. CP=1, S=1, R=1 is not allowed, because it is not able to determine the next state. This condition is said to be a ―race condition‖.

In the logic symbol CP input is marked with a triangle. It indicates the circuit responds to an input change from 0 to 1. The characteristic table gives the operation conditions of flip-flop. Q(t) is the present state maintained in the flip-flop at time ‗t‘. Q(t+1) is the state after the occurrence of clock pulse.

Truth table

S	R	$Q_{(t+1)}$	Comments
0	0	Q_t	No change
0	1	0	Reset / clear
1	0	1	Set
1	1	*	Not allowed

Edge triggered RS flip-flop:

Some flip-flops have an RC circuit at the input next to the clock pulse. By the design of the circuit the R-C time constant is much smaller than the width of the clock pulse. So the output changes will occur only at specific level of clock pulse. The capacitor gets fully charged when clock pulse goes from low to high. This change produces a narrow positive spike. Later at the trailing edge it produces narrow negative spike. This operation is called edge triggering, as the flip-flop responds only at the changing state of clock pulse. If output transition occurs at rising edge of clock pulse (0□1), it is called positively edge triggering. If it occurs at trailing edge (1□0) it is called negative edge triggering. Figure shows the logic and block diagram.

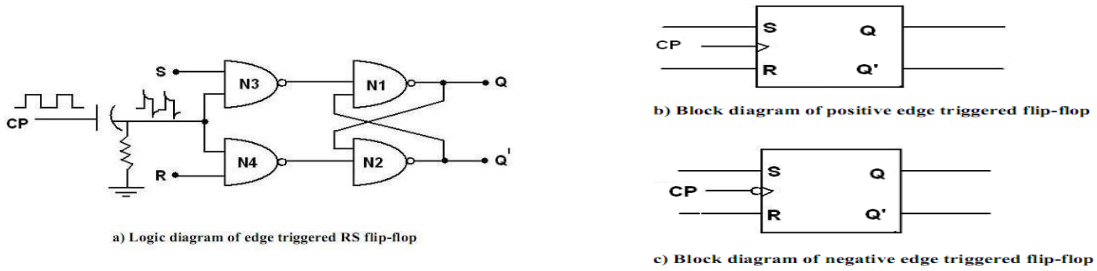
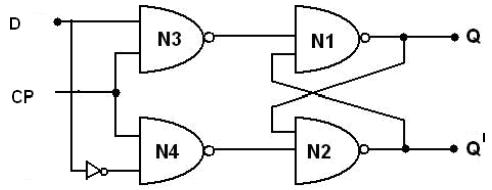


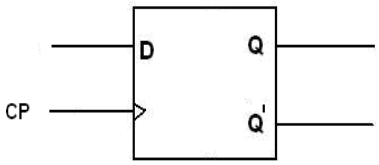
Figure: Edge triggered RS flip-flop

D flip-flop:

The D flip-flop is the modified form of R-S flip-flop. R-S flip-flop is converted to D flip-flop by adding an inverter between S and R and only one input D is taken instead of S and R. So one input is D and complement of D is given as another input. The logic diagram and the block diagram of D flip-flop with clocked input



a) Logic diagram



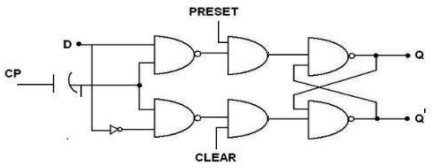
b) Block diagram

When the clock is low both the NAND gates (N1 and N2) are disabled and Q retains its last value. When clock is high both the gates are enabled and the input value at D is transferred to its output Q. D flip-flop is also called ‑Data flip-flop‖.

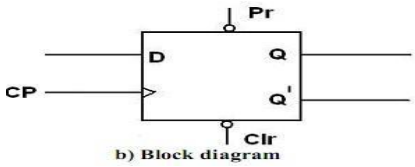
Truth table

CP	D	Q
0	x	Previous state
1	0	0
1	1	1

Edge Triggered D Flip-flop:



a) Logic diagram



b) Block diagram

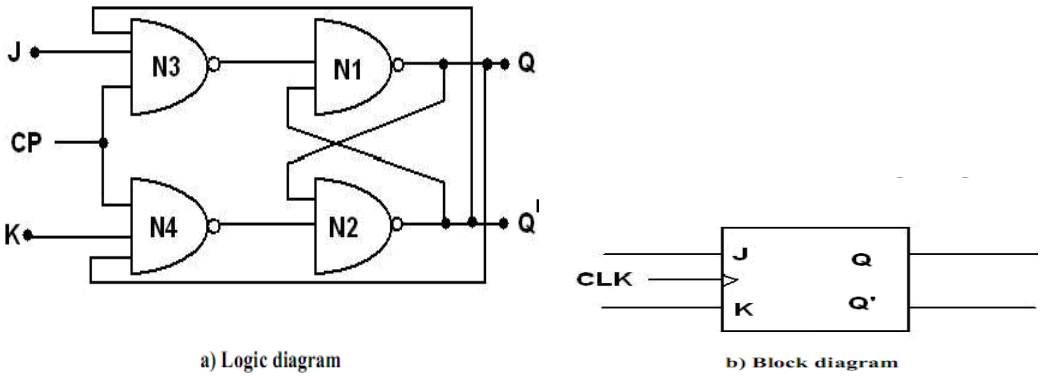
Truth table

PRESET	CLEAR	CP	D	Q
0	0	X	X	*(forbidden)
0	1	X	X	1
1	0	X	X	0
1	0	0	X	NC
1	1	1	X	NC
1	1	↓	X	NC
1	1	↑	0	0
1	1	↑	1	1

Figure: truth table, block diagram, logic diagram of edge triggered flip-flop

JK flip-flop (edge triggered JK flip-flop)

The race condition in RS flip-flop, when R=S=1 is eliminated in J-K flip-flop. There is a feedback from the output to the inputs. Figure 3.4 represents one way of building a JK flip-flop**.**



a) Logic diagram

b) Block diagram

Truth table

J	K	$Q_{(t+1)}$	Comments
0	0	Q_t	No change
0	1	0	Reset / clear
1	0	1	Set
1	1	Q'_t	Complement/ toggle.

Figure: JK flip-flop

The J and K are called control inputs, because they determine what the flip-flop does when a positive clock edge arrives.

Operation:

1. When J=0, K=0 then both N3 and N4 will produce high output and the previous value of Q and Q‘ retained as it is.

2. When J=0, K=1, N3 will get an output as 1 and output of N4 depends on the value of Q. The final output is Q=0, Q‘=1 i.e., reset state

3. When J=1, K=0 the output of N4 is 1 and N3 depends on the value of Q‘. The final output is Q=1 and Q‘=0 i.e., set state

4. When J=1, K=1 it is possible to set (or) reset the flip-flop depending on the current state of output. If Q=1, Q‘=0 then N4 passes ‘0‘to N2 which produces Q‘=1, Q=0 which is reset state. When J=1, K=1, Q changes to the complement of the last state. The flip-flop is said to be in the toggle state.

The characteristic equation of the JK flip-flop is:

$$Q_{next} = J\overline{Q} + \overline{K}Q$$

JK flip-flop operation[28]								
Characteristic table				Excitation table				
J	K	Q_{next}	Comment	Q	Q_{next}	J	K	Comment
0	0	Q	hold state	0	0	0	X	No change
0	1	0	reset	0	1	1	X	Set
1	0	1	set	1	0	X	1	Reset
1	1	Q	toggle	1	1	X	0	No change

T flip-flop:

If the T input is high, the T flip-flop changes state ("toggles") whenever the clock input is strobed. If the T input is low, the flip-flop holds the previous value. This behavior is described by the characteristic equation

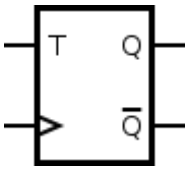


Figure : symbol for T flip flop

$Q_{next} = T \oplus Q = T\overline{Q} + \overline{T}Q$ (expanding the XOR operator

When T is held high, the toggle flip-flop divides the clock frequency by two; that is, if clock frequency is 4 MHz, the output frequency obtained from the flip-flop will be 2 MHz This "divide by" feature has application in various types of digital counters. A T flip-flop can also be built using a JK flip-flop (J & K pins are connected together and act as T) or D flip-flop (T input and $P_{revious}$ is connected to the D input through an XOR gate).

T flip-flop operation[28]							
Characteristic table				**Excitation table**			
T	Q	Q_{next}	**Comment**	Q	Q_{next}	T	**Comment**
0	0	0	hold state (no clk)	0	0	0	No change
0	1	1	hold state (no clk)	1	1	0	No change
1	0	1	toggle	0	1	1	Complement
1	1	0	toggle	1	0	1	Complement

Flip flop operating characteristics:

The operation characteristics specify the performance, operating requirements, and operating limitations of the circuits. The operation characteristics mentions here apply to all flip-flops regardless of the particular form of the circuit.

Propagation Delay Time: is the interval of time required after an input signal has been applied for the resulting output change to occur.

Set-up Time: is the minimum interval required for the logic levels to be maintained constantly on the inputs (J and K, or S and R, or D) prior to the triggering edge of the clock pulse in order for the levels to be reliably clocked into the flip-flop.

Hold Time: is the minimum interval required for the logic levels to remain on the inputs after the triggering edge of the clock pulse in order for the levels to be reliably clocked into the flip- flop.

Maximum Clock Frequency: is the highest rate that a flip-flop can be reliably triggered.

Power Dissipation: is the total power consumption of the device. It is equal to product of supply voltage (Vcc) and the current (Icc).

$P=V_{cc}.I_{cc}$

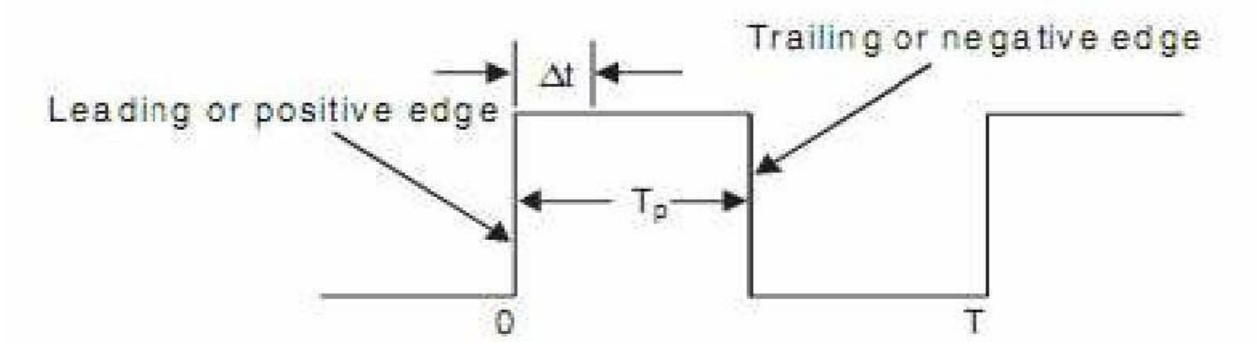
The power dissipation of a flip flop is usually in mW.

Pulse Widths: are the minimum pulse widths specified by the manufacturer for the Clock, SET and CLEAR inputs.

Clock transition times: for reliable triggering, the clock waveform transition times should be kept very short. If the clock signal takes too long to make the transitions from one level to other, the flip flop may either triggering erratically or not trigger at all.

Race around Condition

The inherent difficulty of an S-R flip-flop (i.e., S = R = 1) is eliminated by using the feedback connections from the outputs to the inputs of gate 1 and gate 2 as shown in Figure. Truth tables in figure were formed with the assumption that the inputs do not change during the clock pulse (CLK = 1). But the consideration is not true because of the feedback connections



- Consider, for example, that the inputs are J = K = 1 and Q = 1, and a pulse as shown in Figure is applied at the clock input.
- After a time interval t equal to the propagation delay through two NAND gates in series, the outputs will change to Q = 0. So now we have J = K = 1 and Q = 0.
- After another time interval of t the output will change back to Q = 1. Hence, we conclude that for the time duration of tP of the clock pulse, the output will oscillate between 0 and 1. Hence, at the end of the clock pulse, the value of the output is not certain. This situation is referred to as a race-around condition.
- Generally, the propagation delay of TTL gates is of the order of nanoseconds. So if the clock pulse is of the order of microseconds, then the output will change thousands of times within the clock pulse.
- This race-around condition can be avoided if tp< t < T. Due to the small propagation delay of the ICs it may be difficult to satisfy the above condition.
- A more practical way to avoid the problem is to use the master-slave (M-S) configuration as discussed below.

Applications of flip-flops:

Frequency Division: When a pulse waveform is applied to the clock input of a J-K flip-flop that is connected to toggle, the Q output is a square wave with half the frequency of the clock input. If more flip-flops are connected together as shown in the figure below, further division of the clock frequency can be achieved

. **Parallel data storage:** a group of flip-flops is called register. To store data of N bits, N flip-flops are required. Since the data is available in parallel form. When a clock pulse is applied to all flip-flops simultaneously, these bits will transfer will be transferred to the Q outputs of the flip flops.

Serial data storage: to store data of N bits available in serial form, N number of D-flip-flops is connected in cascade. The clock signal is connected to all the flip-flops. The serial data is applied to the D input terminal of the first flip-flop.

Transfer of data: data stored in flip-flops may be transferred out in a serial fashion, i.e., bit-by-bit from the output of one flip-flops or may be transferred out in parallel form.

Excitation Tables:

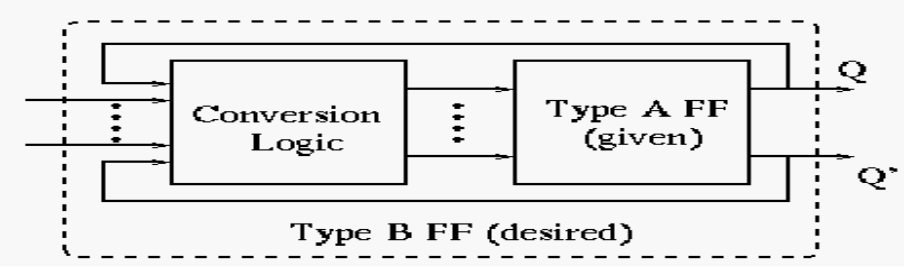
Previous State -> Present State	D
0 -> 0	0
0 -> 1	1
1 -> 0	0
1 -> 1	1

Previous State -> Present State	J	K
0 -> 0	0	X
0 -> 1	1	X
1 -> 0	X	1
1 -> 1	X	0

Previous State -> Present State	S	R
0 -> 0	0	X
0 -> 1	1	0
1 -> 0	0	1
1 -> 1	X	0

Previous State -> Present State	T
0 -> 0	0
0 -> 1	1
1 -> 0	1
1 -> 1	0

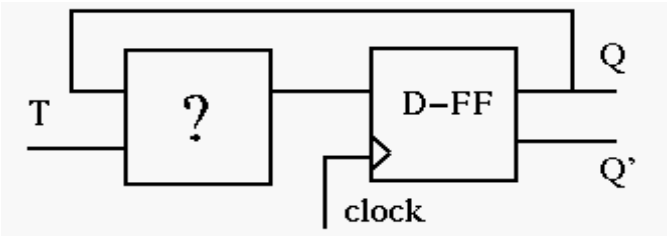
Conversions of flip-flops:



The key here is to use the excitation table, which shows the necessary triggering signal (S,R,J,K, D and T) for a desired flip-flop state transition :

Q_t	Q_{t+1}	S	R	J	K	D	T
0	0	0	x	0	x	0	0
0	1	1	0	1	x	1	1
1	0	0	1	x	1	0	1
1	1	x	0	x	0	1	0

Convert a D-FF to a T-FF:



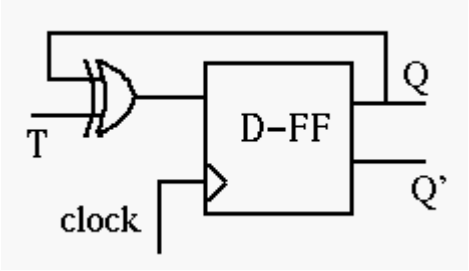
We need to design the circuit to generate the triggering signal D as a function of T and Q:
. Consider the excitation table:

$$D = f(T, Q).$$

Q_t	Q_{t+1}	T	D
0	0	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

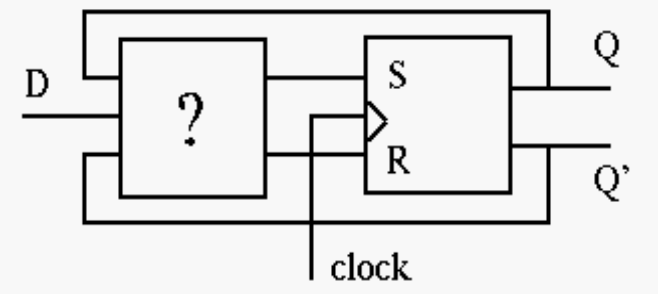
Treating as a function of and current FF state , we have

$$D = T'Q + TQ' = T \oplus Q$$



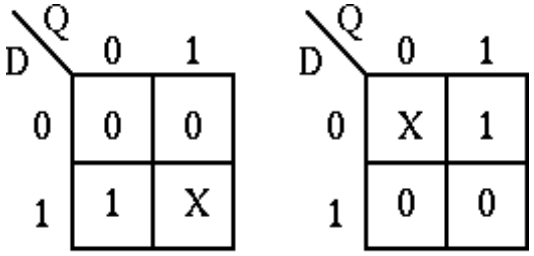
Convert a RS-FF to a D-FF:

We need to design the circuit to generate the triggering signals S and R as functions of and consider the excitation table:

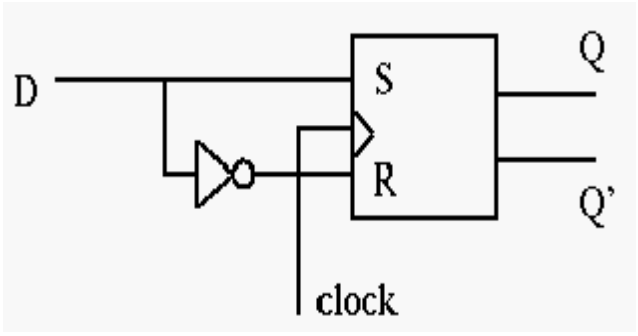


Q_t	Q_{t+1}	D	S	R
0	0	0	0	x
0	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	1
1	1	1	x	0

The desired signal and can be obtained as functions of and current FF state from the Karnaugh maps:



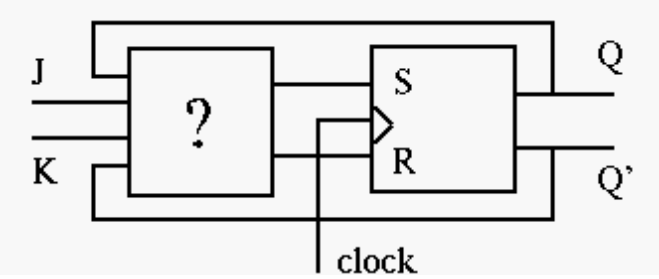
$S = D, \quad R = D'$



Convert a RS-FF to a JK-FF:

We need to design the circuit to generate the triggering signals S and R as functions of, J, K.

Consider the excitation table**:** The desired signal and as functions of, and current FF state can be obtained from the Karnaugh maps:



Q_t	Q_{t+1}	J	K	S	R
0	0	0	x	0	x
0	1	1	x	1	0
1	0	x	1	0	1
1	1	x	0	x	0

K-maps:

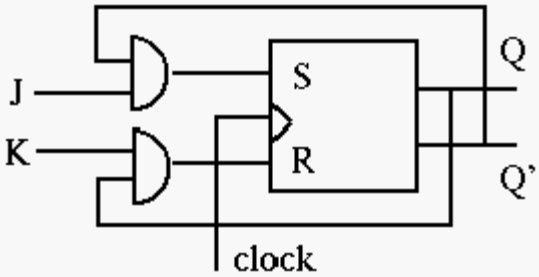
K \ QJ	00	01	11	10
0	0	1	X	X
1	0	1	0	0

S=Q'J

K \ QJ	00	01	11	10
0	X	0	0	0
1	X	0	1	1

R=QK

$S = Q'J, \quad R = QK$



The Master-Slave JK Flip-flop:

The Master-Slave Flip-Flop is basically two gated SR flip-flops connected together in a series configuration with the slave having an inverted clock pulse. The outputs from Q and Q from the "Slave" flip-flop are fed back to the inputs of the "Master" with the outputs of the "Master" flip-flop being connected to the two inputs of the "Slave" flip-flop. This feedback configuration from the slave's output to the master's input gives the characteristic toggle of the JK flip-flop as shown below.
The input signals J and K are connected to the gated "master" SR flip-flop which "locks" the input condition while the clock (Clk) input is "HIGH" at logic level "1". As the clock input of the "slave" flip-flop is the inverse (complement) of the "master" clock input, the "slave" SR flip- flop does not toggle. The outputs from the "master" flip-flop are only "seen" by the gated "slave" flip-flop when the clock input goes "LOW" to logic level "0". When the clock is "LOW", the outputs from the "master" flip-flop are latched and any additional changes to its inputs are ignored. The gated "slave" flip-flop now responds to the state of its inputs passed over by the "master" section. Then on the "Low-to-High" transition of the clock pulse the inputs of the "master" flip-flop are fed through to the gated inputs of the "slave" flip-flop and on the "High-to- Low" transition the same inputs are reflected on the output of the "slave" making this type of flip-flop edge or pulse-triggered. Then, the circuit accepts input data when the clock signal is "HIGH", and passes the data to the output on the falling-edge of the clock signal. In other words, the Master-Slave JK Flip-flop is a "Synchronous" device as it only passes data with the timing of the clock signal.

Shift registers:

In digital circuits, a **shift register** is a cascade of flip-flops sharing the same clock, in which the output of each flip-flop is connected to the "data" input of the next flip-flop in the chain, resulting in a circuit that shifts by one position the "bit array" stored in it, *shifting in* the data present at its input and *shifting out* the last bit in the array, at each transition of the clock input. More generally, a **shift register** may be multidimensional, such that its "data in" and stage outputs are themselves bit arrays: this is implemented simply by running several shift registers of the same bit-length in parallel.
Shift registers can have both parallel and serial inputs and outputs. These are often configured as

serial-in, parallel-out (SIPO) or as **parallel-in, serial-out** (PISO). There are also types that have both serial and parallel input and types with serial and parallel output. There are also **bi-directional** shift registers which allow shifting in both directions: L→R or R→L. The serial input and last output of a shift register can also be connected to create a **circular shift register**

Shift registers are a type of logic circuits closely related to counters. They are basically for the storage and transfer of digital data.

Buffer register:

The buffer register is the simple set of registers. It is simply stores the binary word. The buffer may be controlled buffer. Most of the buffer registers used D Flip-flops.

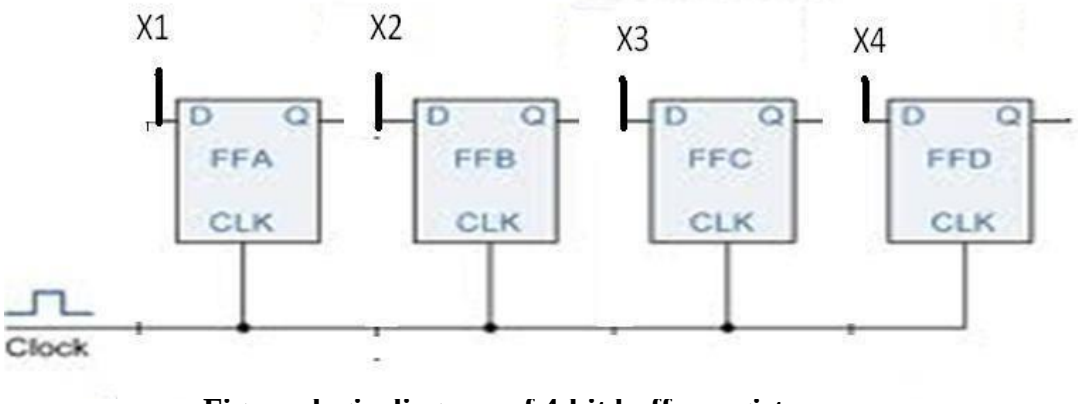


Figure: logic diagram of 4-bit buffer register

The figure shows a 4-bit buffer register. The binary word to be stored is applied to the data terminals. On the application of clock pulse, the output word becomes the same as the word applied at the terminals. i.e., the input word is loaded into the register by the application of clock pulse.

When the positive clock edge arrives, the stored word becomes:

$Q_4Q_3Q_2Q_1=X_4X_3X_2X_1$

$Q=X$

Controlled buffer register:

If goes LOW, all the FFs are RESET and the output becomes, Q=0000.

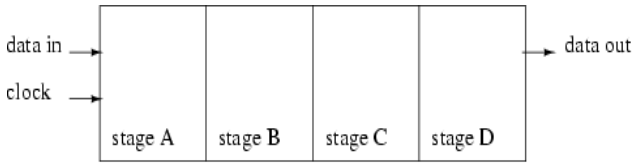
When is HIGH, the register is ready for action. LOAD is the control input. When LOAD is HIGH, the data bits X can reach the D inputs of FF‘s.

$Q_4Q_3Q_2Q_1=X_4X_3X_2X_1$

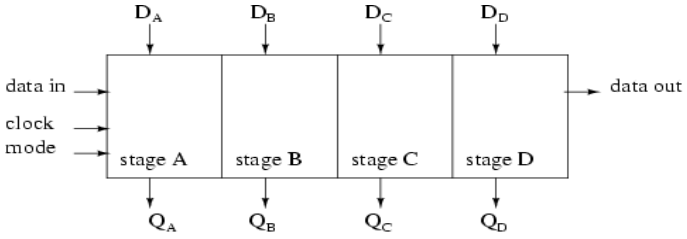
$Q=X$

When load is low, the X bits cannot reach the FF‘s.

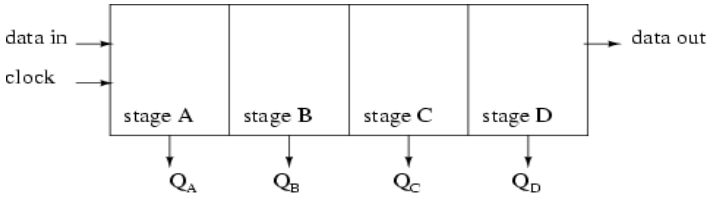
Data transmission in shift registers:



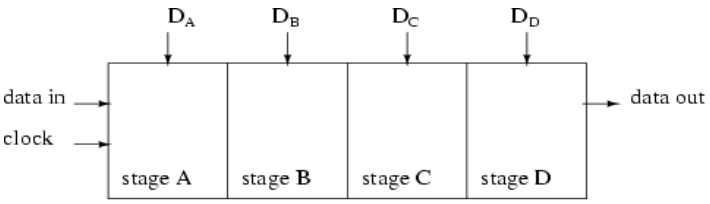
Serial-in, serial-out shift register with 4-stages



Parallel-in, parallel-out shift register with 4-stages



Serial-in, parallel-out shift register with 4-stages



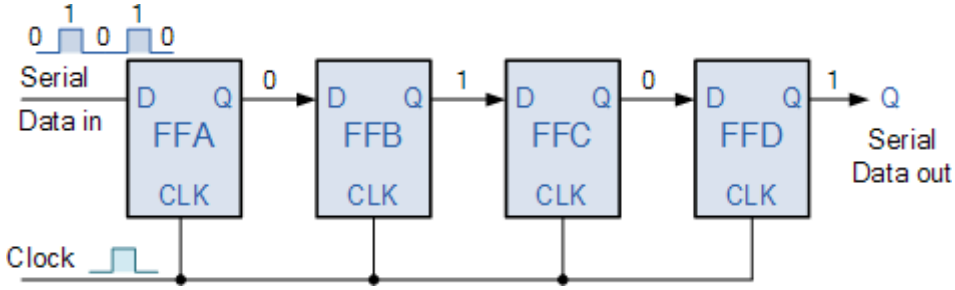
Parallel-in, serial-out shift register with 4-stages

A number of ff's connected together such that data may be shifted into and shifted out of them is called shift register. data may be shifted into or out of the register in serial form or in parallel form. There are four basic types of shift registers.

1. Serial in, serial out, shift right, shift registers
2. Serial in, serial out, shift left, shift registers
3. Parallel in, serial out shift registers
4. Parallel in, parallel out shift registers

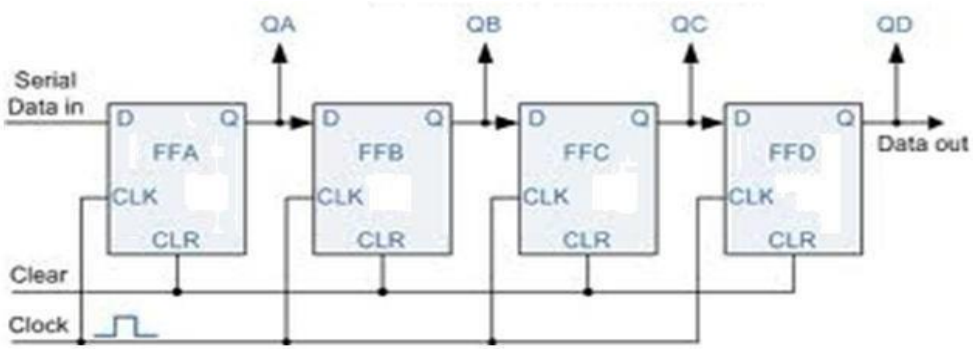
Serial IN, serial OUT, shift right, shift left register:

The logic diagram of 4-bit serial in serial out, right shift register with four stages. The register can store four bits of data. Serial data is applied at the input D of the first FF. the Q output of the first FF is connected to the D input of another FF. the data is outputted from the Q terminal of the last FF.



When serial data is transferred into a register, each new bit is clocked into the first FF at the positive going edge of each clock pulse. The bit that was previously stored by the first FF is transferred to the second FF. the bit that was stored by the Second FF is transferred to the third FF.

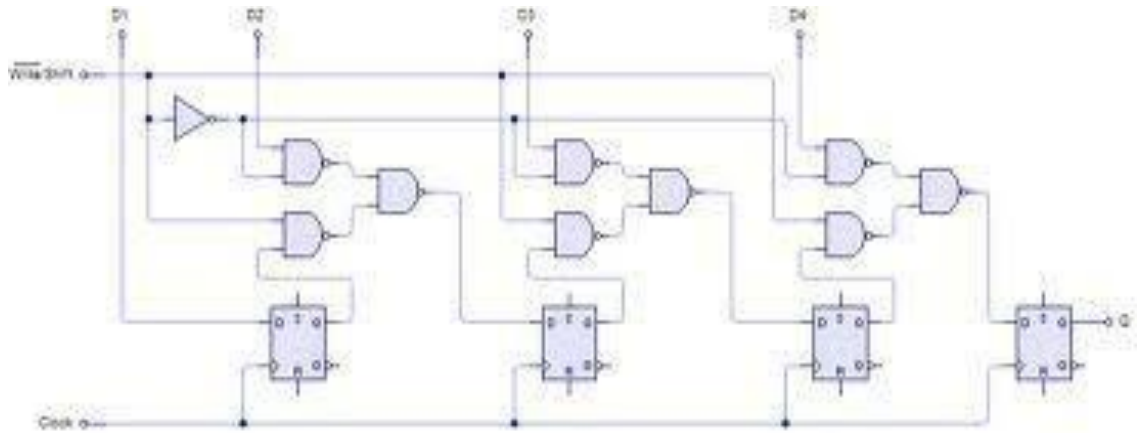
Serial-in, parallel-out, shift register:



In this type of register, the data bits are entered into the register serially, but the data stored in the register is shifted out in parallel form.

Once the data bits are stored, each bit appears on its respective output line and all bits are available simultaneously, rather than on a bit-by-bit basis with the serial output. The serial-in, parallel out, shift register can be used as serial-in, serial out, shift register if the output is taken from the Q terminal of the last FF.

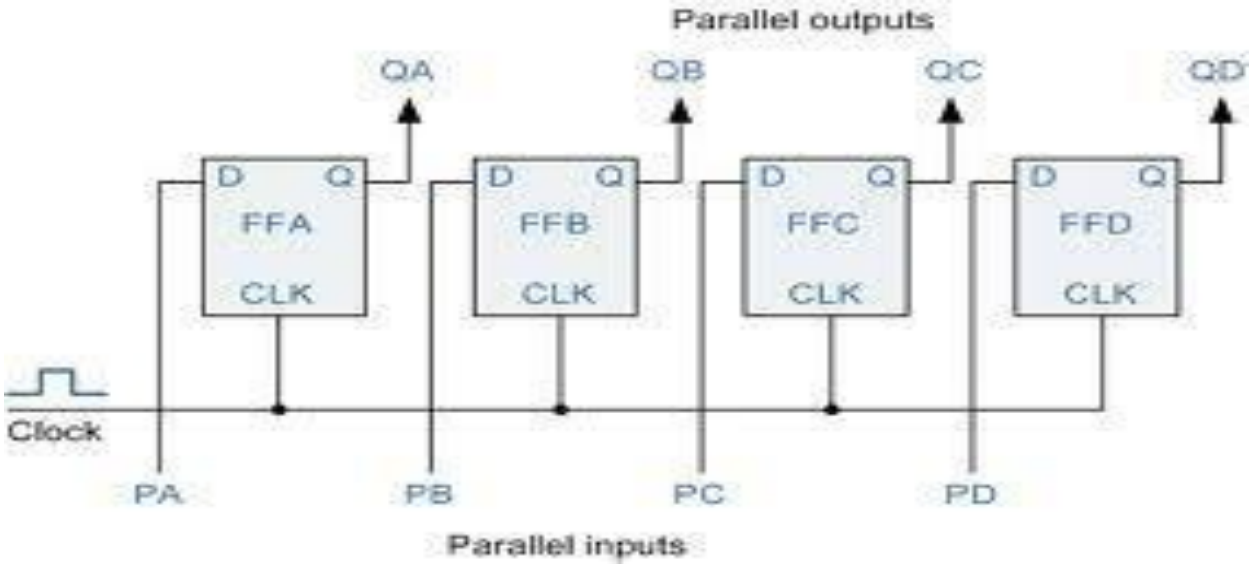
Parallel-in, serial-out, shift register:



For a parallel-in, serial out, shift register, the data bits are entered simultaneously into their respective stages on parallel lines, rather than on a bit-by-bit basis on one line as with serial data bits are transferred out of the register serially. On a bit-by-bit basis over a single line.

There are four data lines A,B,C,D through which the data is entered into the register in parallel form. The signal shift/ load allows the data to be entered in parallel form into the register and the data is shifted out serially from terminalQ4

Parallel-in, parallel-out, shift register



In a parallel-in, parallel-out shift register, the data is entered into the register in parallel form, and also the data is taken out of the register in parallel form. Data is applied to the D input terminals of the FF‘s. When a clock pulse is applied, at the positive going edge of the pulse, the D inputs are shifted into the Q outputs of the FFs. The register now stores the data. The stored data is available instantaneously for shifting out in parallel form.

Bidirectional shift register:

A bidirectional shift register is one which the data bits can be shifted from left to right or from right to left. A fig shows the logic diagram of a 4-bit serial-in, serial out, bidirectional shift register. Right/left is the mode signal, when right /left is a 1, the logic circuit works as a shift-register.the bidirectional operation is achieved by using the mode signal and two NAND gates and one OR gate for each stage.

A HIGH on the right/left control input enables the AND gates G1, G2, G3 and G4 and disables the AND gates G5,G6,G7 and G8, and the state of Q output of each FF is passed through the gate to the D input of the following FF. when a clock pulse occurs, the data bits are then effectively shifted one place to the right. A LOW on the right/left control inputs enables the AND gates G5, G6, G7 and G8 and disables the And gates G1, G2, G3 and G4 and the Q output of each FF is passed to the D input of the preceding FF. when a clock pulse occurs, the data bits are then effectively shifted one place to the left. Hence, the circuit works as a bidirectional shift register

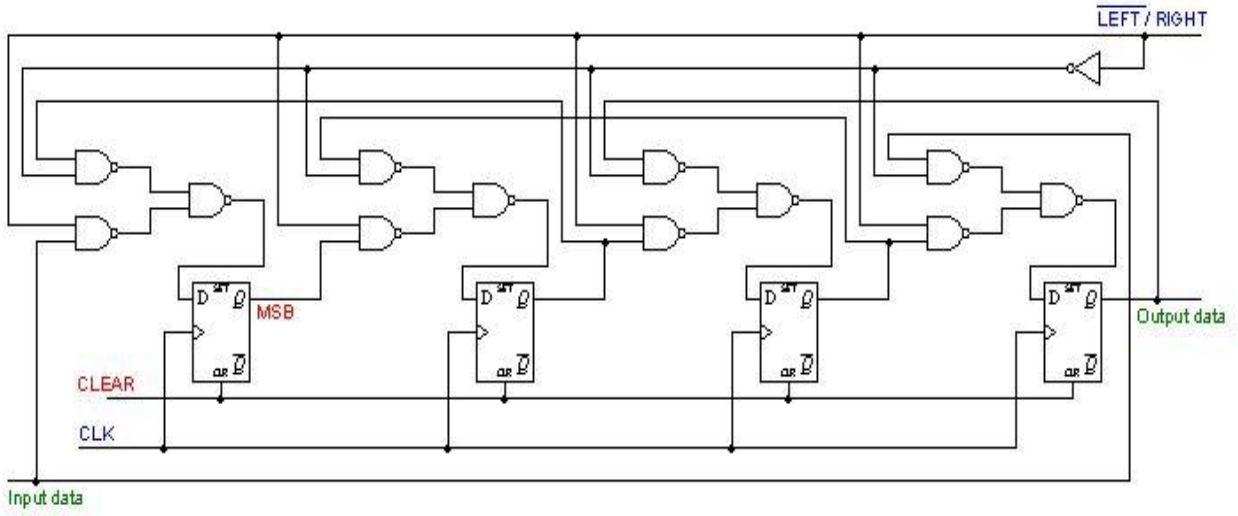


Figure: logic diagram of a 4-bit bidirectional shift register

Universal shift register:

A register is capable of shifting in one direction only is a unidirectional shift register. One that can shift both directions is a bidirectional shift register. If the register has both shifts and parallel load capabilities, it is referred to as a universal shift registers. Universal shift register is a bidirectional register, whose input can be either in serial form or in parallel form and whose output also can be in serial form or I parallel form.

The most general shift register has the following capabilities.

1. A clear control to clear the register to 0
2. A clock input to synchronize the operations
3. A shift-right control to enable the shift-right operation and serial input and output lines associated with the shift-right

4. A shift-left control to enable the shift-left operation and serial input and output lines associated with the shift-left
5. A parallel loads control to enable a parallel transfer and the n input lines associated with the parallel transfer
6. N parallel output lines
7. A control state that leaves the information in the register unchanged in the presence of the clock.

A universal shift register can be realized using multiplexers. The below fig shows the logic diagram of a 4-bit universal shift register that has all capabilities. It consists of 4 D flip-flops and four multiplexers. The four multiplexers have two common selection inputs s1 and s0. Input 0 in each multiplexer is selected when S1S0=00, input 1 is selected when S1S0=01 and input 2 is selected when S1S0=10 and input 4 is selected when S1S0=11. The selection inputs control the mode of operation of the register according to the functions entries. When S1S0=0, the present value of the register is applied to the D inputs of flip-flops. The condition forms a path from the output of each flip-flop into the input of the same flip-flop. The next clock edge transfers into each flip-flop the binary value it held previously, and no change of state occurs. When S1S0=01, terminal 1 of the multiplexer inputs have a path to the D inputs of the flip-flop. This causes a shift-right operation, with serial input transferred into flip-flopA4. When S1S0=10, a shift left operation results with the other serial input going into flip-flop A1. Finally when S1S0=11, the binary information on the parallel input lines is transferred into the register simultaneously during the next clock cycle

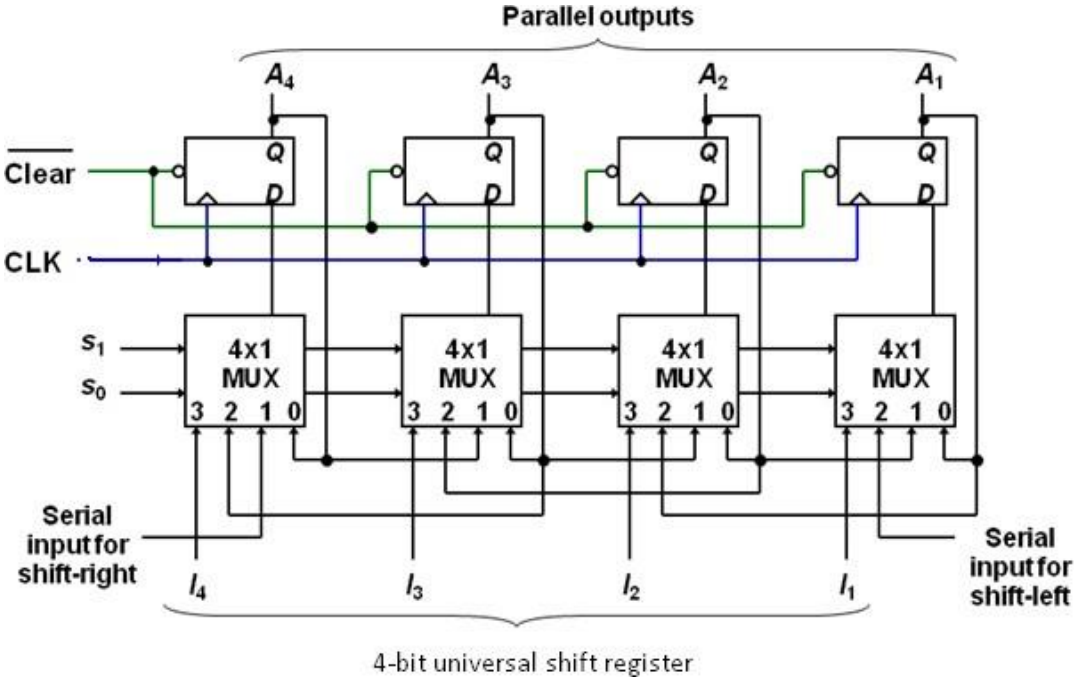


Figure: logic diagram 4-bit universal shift register

Function table for theregister

mode control		
S0	**S1**	**register operation**
0	0	No change
0	1	Shift Right
1	0	Shift left
1	1	Parallel load

Counters:

Counter is a device which stores (and sometimes displays) the number of times particular event or process has occurred, often in relationship to a clock signal. A Digital counter is a set of flip flops whose state change in response to pulses applied at the input to the counter. Counters may be asynchronous counters or synchronous counters. Asynchronous counters are also called ripple counters

In electronics counters can be implemented quite easily using register-type circuits such as the flip-flops and a wide variety of classifications exist:

- Asynchronous (ripple) counter – changing state bits are used as clocks to subsequent state flip-flops
- Synchronous counter – all state bits change under control of a singleclock
- Decade counter – counts through ten states per stage
- Up/down counter – counts both up and down, under command of a control input
- Ring counter – formed by a shift register with feedback connection in a ring
- Johnson counter – a *twisted* ring counter
- Cascaded counter
- Modulus counter.

Each is useful for different applications. Usually, counter circuits are digital in nature, and count in natural binary Many types of counter circuits are available as digital building blocks, for example a number of chips in the 4000 series implement different counters.

Occasionally there are advantages to using a counting sequence other than the natural binary sequence such as the binary coded decimal counter, a linear feed-back shift register counter, or a gray-code counter.

Counters are useful for digital clocks and timers, and in oven timers, VCR clocks, etc.

Asynchronous counters:

An asynchronous (ripple) counter is a single JK-type flip-flop, with its J (data) input fed from its own inverted output. This circuit can store one bit, and hence can count from zero to one before it overflows (starts over from 0). This counter will increment once for every clock cycle and takes two clock cycles to overflow, so every cycle it will alternate between a transition from 0 to 1 and a transition from 1 to 0. Notice that this creates a new clock with a 50% duty cycle at exactly half the frequency of the input clock. If this output is then used as the clock signal for a similarly arranged D flip-flop (remembering to invert the output to the input), one will get another 1 bit counter that counts half as fast. Putting them together yields a two-bit counter:

Two-bit ripple up-counter using negative edge triggered flip flop:

Two bit ripple counter used two flip-flops. There are four possible states from 2 – bit up-counting I.e. 00, 01, 10 and 11.

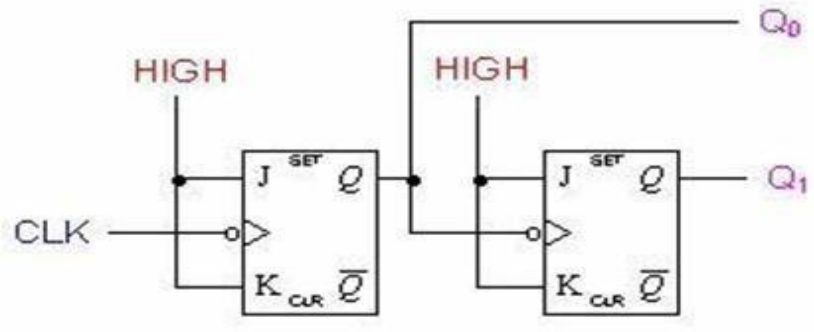
· The counter is initially assumed to be at a state 00 where the outputs of the tow flip-flops are noted as Q_1Q_0. Where Q_1 forms the MSB and Q_0 forms the LSB.

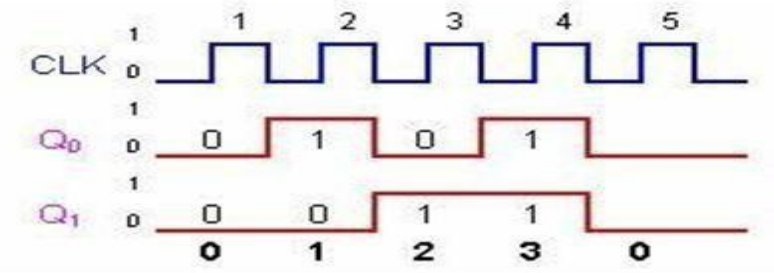
· For the negative edge of the first clock pulse, output of the first flip-flop FF_1 toggles its state. Thus Q_1 remains at 0 and Q_0 toggles to 1 and the counter state are now read as 01.

· During the next negative edge of the input clock pulse FF_1 toggles and $Q_0 = 0$. The output Q0 being a clock signal for the second flip-flop FF_2 and the present transition acts as a negative edge for FF_2 thus toggles its state $Q_1 = 1$. The counter state is now read as 10.

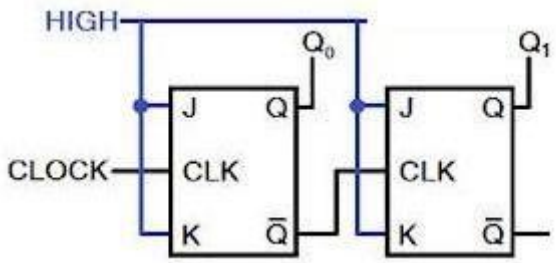
· For the next negative edge of the input clock to FF_1 output Q0 toggles to 1. But this transition from 0 to 1 being a positive edge for FF_2 output Q_1 remains at 1. The counter state is now read as 11.

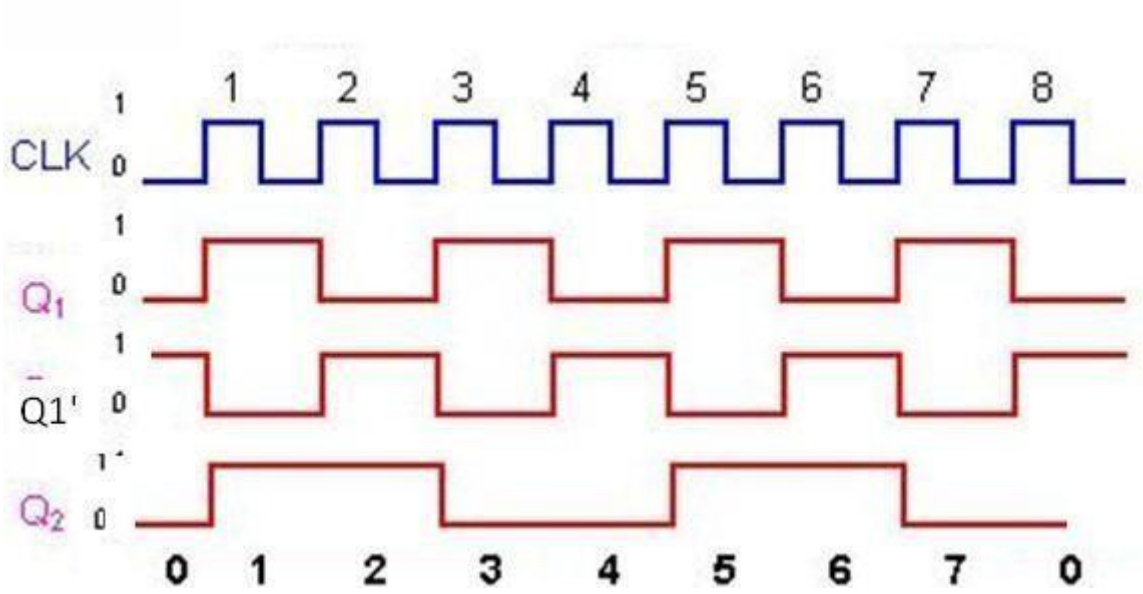
· For the next negative edge of the input clock, Q_0 toggles to 0. This transition from 1 to 0 acts as a negative edge clock for FF_2 and its output Q_1 toggles to 0. Thus the starting state 00 is attained. Figure shown below





Two-bit ripple down-counter using negative edge triggered flip flop:





A 2-bit down-counter counts in the order 0,3,2,1,0,1…….,i.e, 00,11,10,01,00,11 …..,etc. the above fig. shows ripple down counter, using negative edge triggered J-K FFs and its timing diagram.

- For down counting, Q1‘ of FF1 is connected to the clock of Ff2. Let initially all the FF1 toggles, so, Q1 goes from a 0 to a 1 and Q1‘ goes from a 1 to a 0.

- The negative-going signal at Q1‘ is applied to the clock input of FF2, toggles Ff2 and, therefore, Q2 goes from a 0 to a 1.so, after one clock pulse Q2=1 and Q1=1, I.e., the state of the counter is 11.
- At the negative-going edge of the second clock pulse, Q1 changes from a 1 to a 0 and Q1‘ from a 0 to a 1.
- This positive-going signal at Q1‘ does not affect FF2 and, therefore, Q2 remains at a 1. Hence , the state of the counter after second clock pulse is 10
- At the negative going edge of the third clock pulse, FF1 toggles. So Q1, goes from a 0 to a 1 and Q1‘ from 1 to 0. This negative going signal at Q1‘ toggles FF2 and, so, Q2 changes from 1 to 0, hence, the state of the counter after the third clock pulse is 01.
- At the negative going edge of the fourth clock pulse, FF1 toggles. So Q1, goes from a 1 to a 0 and Q1‘ from 0 to 1. . This positive going signal at Q1‘ does not affect FF2 and, so, Q2 remains at 0, hence, the state of the counter after the fourth clock pulse is 00.

Two-bit ripple up-down counter using negative edge triggered flip flop:

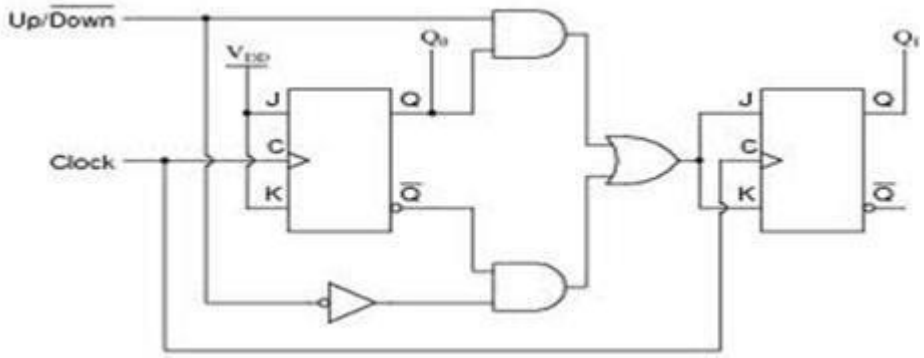


Figure: asynchronous 2-bit ripple up-down counter using negative edge triggered flip flop:

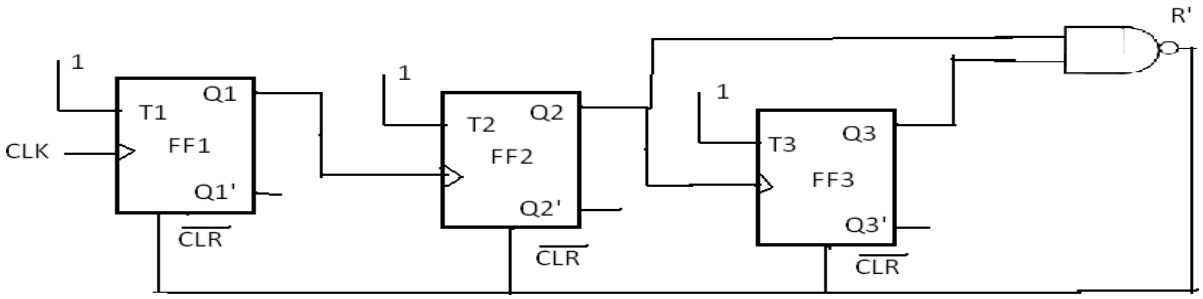
- As the name indicates an up-down counter is a counter which can count both in upward and downward directions. An up-down counter is also called a forward/backward counter or a bidirectional counter. So, a control signal or a mode signal M is required to choose the direction of count. When M=1 for up counting, Q1 is transmitted to clock of FF2 and when M=0 for down counting, Q1‘ is transmitted to clock of FF2. This is achieved by using two AND gates and one OR gates. The external clock signal is applied to FF1.
- Clock signal to FF2= (Q1.Up)+(Q1‘. Down)= Q1m+Q1‘M‘

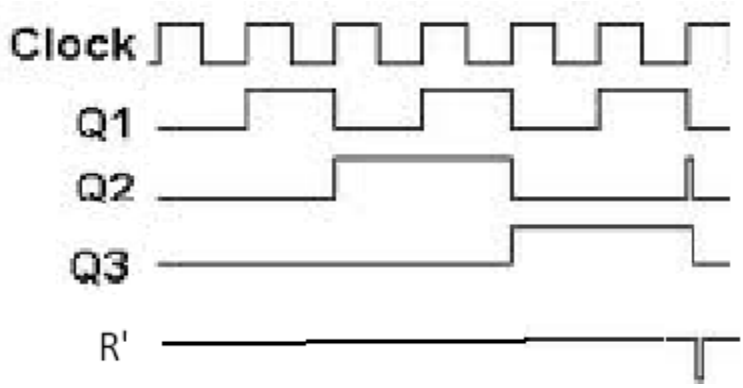
Design of Asynchronous counters:

To design a asynchronous counter, first we write the sequence , then tabulate the values of reset signal R for various states of the counter and obtain the minimal expression for R and R‘ using K-Map or any other method. Provide a feedback such that R and R‘ resets all the FF‘s after the desired count

Design of a Mod-6 asynchronous counter using T FFs:

A mod-6 counter has six stable states 000, 001, 010, 011, 100, and 101. When the sixth clock pulse is applied, the counter temporarily goes to 110 state, but immediately resets to 000 because of the feedback provided. it is ―divide by-6-counter‖, in the sense that it divides the input clock frequency by 6.it requires three FFs, because the smallest value of n satisfying the conditionN≤2^n is n=3; three FFs can have 8 possible states, out of which only six are utilized and the remaining two states 110and 111, are invalid. If initially the counter is in 000 state, then after the sixth clock pulse, it goes to 001, after the second clock pulse, it goes to 010, and so on.





After sixth clock pulse it goes to 000. For the design, write the truth table with present state outputs Q3, Q2 and Q1 as the variables, and reset R as the output and obtain an expression for R in terms of Q3, Q2, and Q1that decides the feedback into be provided. From the truth table, R=Q3Q2. For active-low Reset, R‘ is used. The reset pulse is of very short duration, of the order of nanoseconds and it is equal to the propagation delay time of the NAND gate used. The expression for R can also be determined as follows.

R=0 for 000 to 101, R=1 for 110, and R=X=for111

Therefore,

R=Q3Q2Q1‘+Q3Q2Q1=Q3Q2

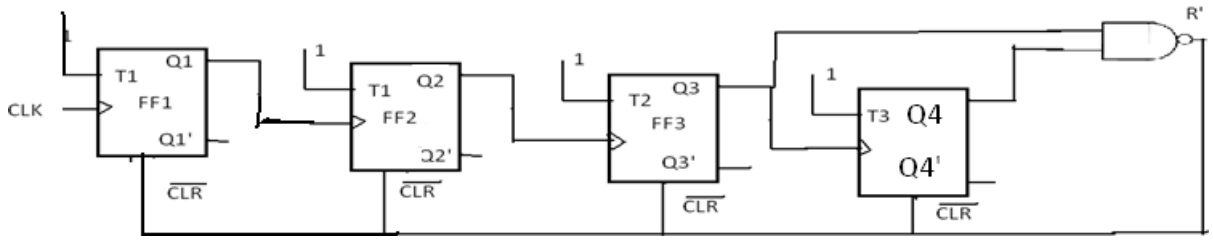
The logic diagram and timing diagram of Mod-6 counter is shown in the above fig.

The truth table is as shown in below.

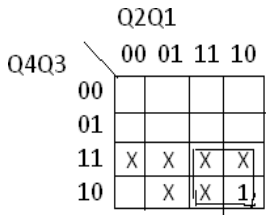
After pulses	States Q3	Q2	Q1	R
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	1	0
2	0	1	0	0
3	0	1	1	0
4	1	0	0	0
5	1	0	1	0
6	1	1	0	1
	↓	↓	↓	
	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0

Design of a mod-10 asynchronous counter using T-flip-flops:

A mod-10 counter is a decade counter. It also called a BCD counter or a divide-by-10 counter. It requires four flip-flops (condition $10 \leq 2^n$ is n=4). So, there are 16 possible states, out of which ten are valid and remaining six are invalid. The counter has ten stable state, 0000 through 1001, i.e., it counts from 0 to 9. The initial state is 0000 and after nine clock pulses it goes to 1001. When the tenth clock pulse is applied, the counter goes to state 1010 temporarily, but because of the feedback provided, it resets to initial state 0000. So, there will be a glitch in the waveform of Q2. The state 1010 is a temporary state for which the reset signal R=1, R=0 for 0000 to 1001, and R=C for 1011 to 1111.



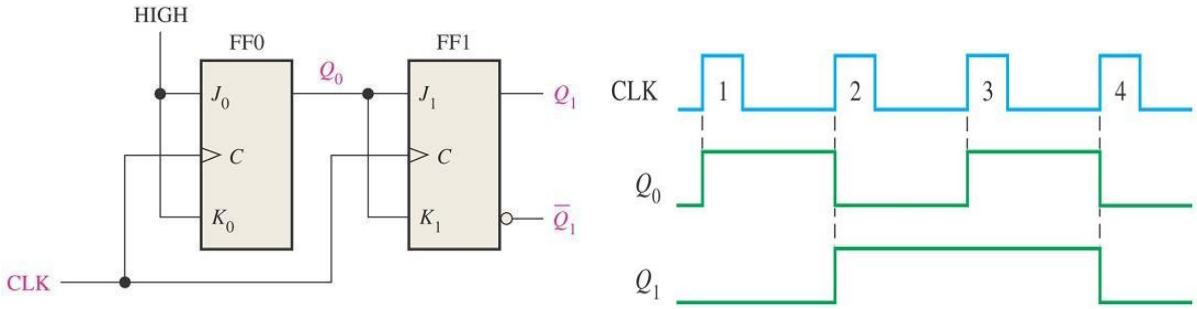
The count table and the K-Map for reset are shown in fig. from the K-Map R=Q4Q2. So, feedback is provided from second and fourth FFs. For active –HIGH reset, Q4Q2 is applied to the clear terminal. For active-LOW reset 4 2 is connected isof all Flip=flops.



After pulses	Count Q4	Q3	Q2	Q1
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1
2	0	0	1	0
3	0	0	1	1
4	0	1	0	0
5	0	0	0	1
6	0	1	1	0
7	0	1	1	1
8	1	0	0	0
9	0	1	0	1
10	0	0	0	0

Synchronous counters:

Asynchronous counters are serial counters. They are slow because each FF can change state only if all the preceding FFs have changed their state. if the clock frequency is very high, the asynchronous counter may skip some of the states. This problem is overcome in synchronous counters or parallel counters. Synchronous counters are counters in which all the flip flops are triggered simultaneously by the clock pulses Synchronous counters have a common clock pulse applied simultaneously to all flip-flops. A 2-Bit Synchronous Binary Counter



Design of synchronous counters:

For a systematic design of synchronous counters. The following procedure is used.

Step 1: State Diagram: draw the state diagram showing all the possible states state diagram which also be called nth transition diagrams, is a graphical means of depicting the sequence of states through which the counter progresses.

Step2: number of flip-flops: based on the description of the problem, determine the required number n of the flip-flops- the smallest value of n is such that the number of states $N \leq 2^n$--- and the desired counting sequence.

Step3: choice of flip-flops excitation table: select the type of flip-flop to be used and write the excitation table. An excitation table is a table that lists the present state (ps) , the next state(ns) and required excitations.

Step4: minimal expressions for excitations: obtain the minimal expressions for the excitations of the FF using K-maps drawn for the excitation of the flip-flops in terms of the present states and inputs.

Step5: logic diagram: draw a logic diagram based on the minimal expressions

Design of a synchronous 3-bit up-down counter using JK flip-flops:

Step1: determine the number of flip-flops required. A 3-bit counter requires three FFs. It has 8 states (000,001,010,011,101,110,111) and all the states are valid. Hence no don‘t cares. For selecting up and down modes, a control or mode signal M is required. When the mode signal M=1 and counts down when M=0. The clock signal is applied to all the FFs simultaneously.

Step2: draw the state diagrams: the state diagram of the 3-bit up-down counter is drawn as

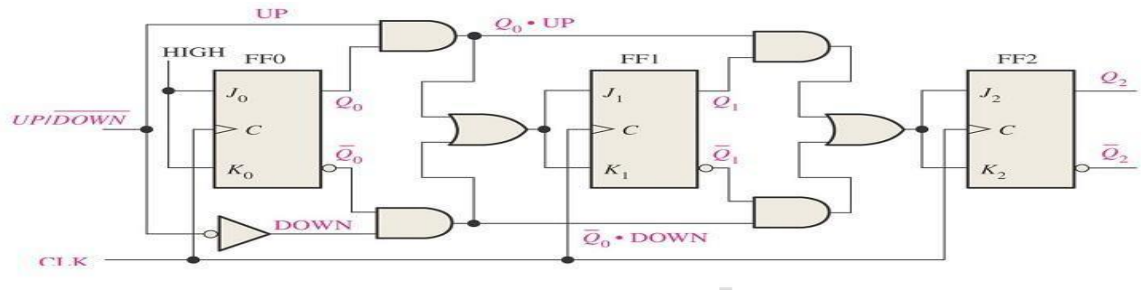
Step3: select the type of flip flop and draw the excitation table: JK flip-flops are selected and the excitation table of a 3-bit up-down counter using JK flip-flops is drawn as shown in fig.

PS			mode	NS			required excitations					
Q3	Q2	Q1	M	Q3	Q2	Q1	J3	K3	J2	K2	J1	K1
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	x	1	x	1	x
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	x	0	x	1	x
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	x	0	x	x	1
0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	x	1	x	x	1
0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	x	x	1	1	x
0	1	0	1	0	1	1	0	x	x	0	1	x
0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	x	x	0	x	1
0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	x	x	1	x	1
1	0	0	0	0	1	1	x	1	1	x	1	x
1	0	0	1	1	0	1	x	0	0	x	1	x
1	0	1	0	1	0	0	x	0	0	x	x	1
1	0	1	1	1	1	0	x	0	1	x	x	1
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	x	0	x	1	1	x
1	1	0	1	1	1	1	x	0	x	0	1	x
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	x	0	x	0	x	1
1	1	1	1	0	0	0	x	1	x	1	x	1

Step4: obtain the minimal expressions: From the excitation table we can conclude that J1=1 and K1=1, because all the entries for J1and K1 are either X or 1. The K-maps for J3, K3,J2 and K2 based on the excitation table and the minimal expression obtained from them are shown in fig.

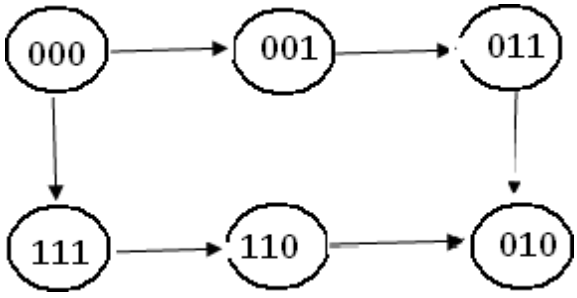
Q3Q2 \ Q1M	00	01	11	10
	1			
			1	
	X	X	X	X
	X	X	X	X

Step5: draw the logic diagram: a logic diagram using those minimal expressions can be drawn as shown in fig.



Design of a synchronous modulo-6 gray cod counter:

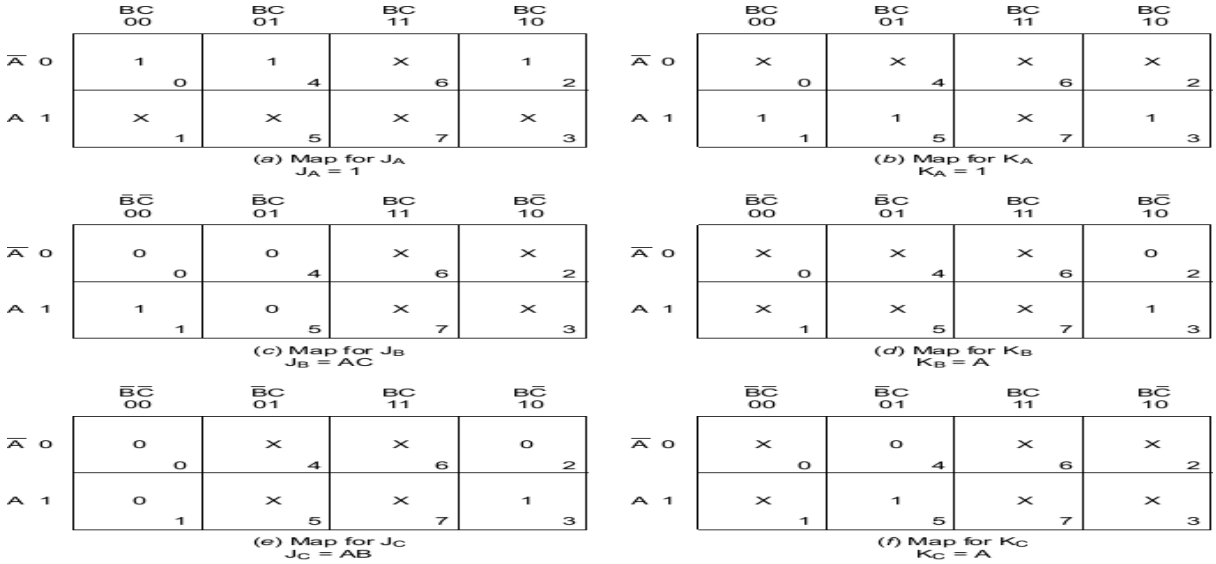
Step 1: the number of flip-flops: we know that the counting sequence for a modulo-6 gray code counter is 000, 001, 011, 010, 110, and 111. It requires n=3FFs ($N \leq 2^n$, i.e., $6 \leq 2^3$). 3 FFs can have 8 states. So the remaining two states 101 and 100 are invalid. The entries for excitation corresponding to invalid states are don‘t cares.
Step2: the state diagram: the state diagram of the mod-6 gray code converter is drawn as shown in fig.



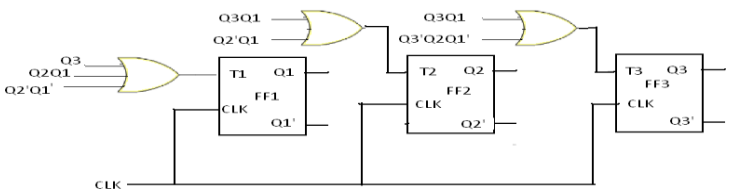
Step3: type of flip-flop and the excitation table: T flip-flops are selected and the excitation table of the mod-6 gray code counter using T-flip-flops is written as shown in fig.

PS			**NS**			**required excitations**		
Q3	**Q2**	**Q1**	**Q3**	**Q2**	**Q1**	**T3**	**T2**	**T1**
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0
0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1
0	1	0	1	1	0	1	0	0
1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1

Step4: The minimal expressions: the K-maps for excitations of FFs T3,T2,and T1 in terms of outputs of FFs Q3,Q2, and Q1, their minimization and the minimal expressions for excitations obtained from them are shown if fig



Step5: the logic diagram: the logic diagram based on those minimal expressions is drawn as shown in fig.



Design of a synchronous BCD Up-Down counter using FFs:

Step1: the number of flip-flops: a BCD counter is a mod-10 counter has 10 states (0000 through 1001) and so it requires n=4FFs($N \leq 2^n$,, i.e., $10 \leq 2^4$). 4 FFS can have 16 states. So out of 16 states, six states (1010 through 1111) are invalid. For selecting up and down mode, a control or mode signal M is required. , it counts up when M=1 and counts down when M=0. The clock signal is applied to all FFs.

Step2: the state diagram: The state diagram of the mod-10 up-down counter is drawn as shown in fig.

Step3: types of flip-flops and excitation table: T flip-flops are selected and the excitation table of the modulo-10 up down counter using T flip-flops is drawn as shown in fig.

The remaining minterms are don‘t cares(∑d(20,21,22,23,24,25,26,37,28,29,30,31)) from the excitation table we can see that T1=1 and the expression for T4,T3,T2 are asfollows.

T4=∑m(0,15,16,19)+d(20,21,22,23,24,25,26,27,28,29,30,31)

T3=∑m(7,15,16,8)+d(20,21,22,23,24,25,26,27,28,29,30,31)

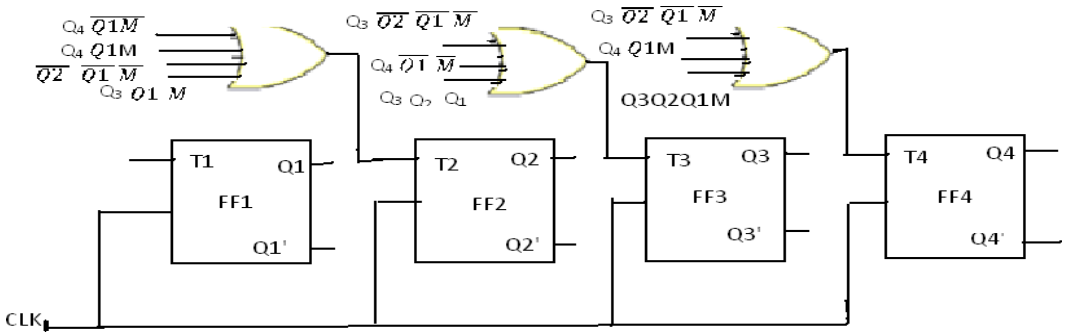
T2=∑m(3,4,7,8,11,12,15,16)+d(20,21,22,23,24,25,26,27,28,29,30,31)

PS				**mode**	**NS**				**required excitations**			
Q4	**Q3**	**Q2**	**Q1**	**M**	**Q4**	**Q3**	**Q2**	**Q1**	**T4**	**T3**	**T2**	**T1**
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1
0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	1	1
0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1
0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
0	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1
0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
0	1	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1

Step4: The minimal expression: since there are 4 state variables and a mode signal, we require 5 variable kmaps. 20 conditions of Q4Q3Q2Q1M are valid and the remaining 12 combinations are invalid. So the entries for excitations corresponding to those invalid combinations are don‘t cares. Minimizing K-maps for T2 we get

T 2= Q4Q1‘M+Q4‘Q1M+Q2Q1‘M‘+Q3Q1‘M‘

Step5: the logic diagram: the logic diagram based on the above equation is shown in fig.



Shift register counters:

One of the applications of shift register is that they can be arranged to form several types of counters. The most widely used shift register counter is ring counter as well as the twisted ring counter.

Ring counter: this is the simplest shift register counter. The basic ring counter using D flip- flops is shown in fig. the realization of this counter using JK FFs. The Q output of each stage is connected to the D flip-flop connected back to the ring counter.

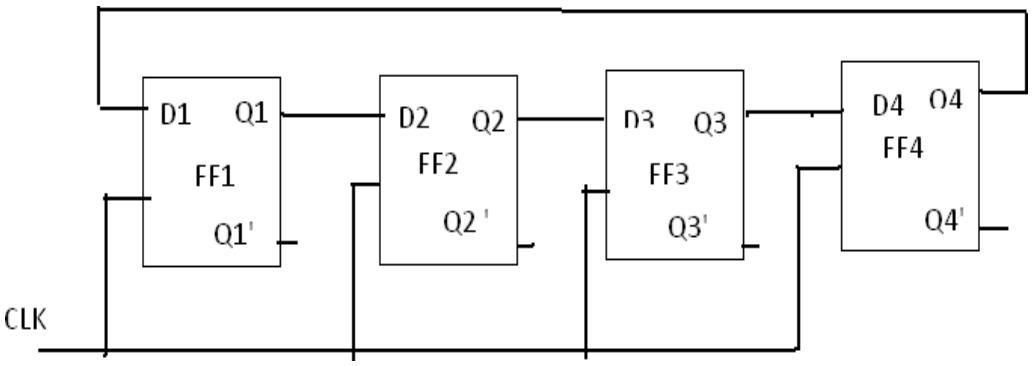
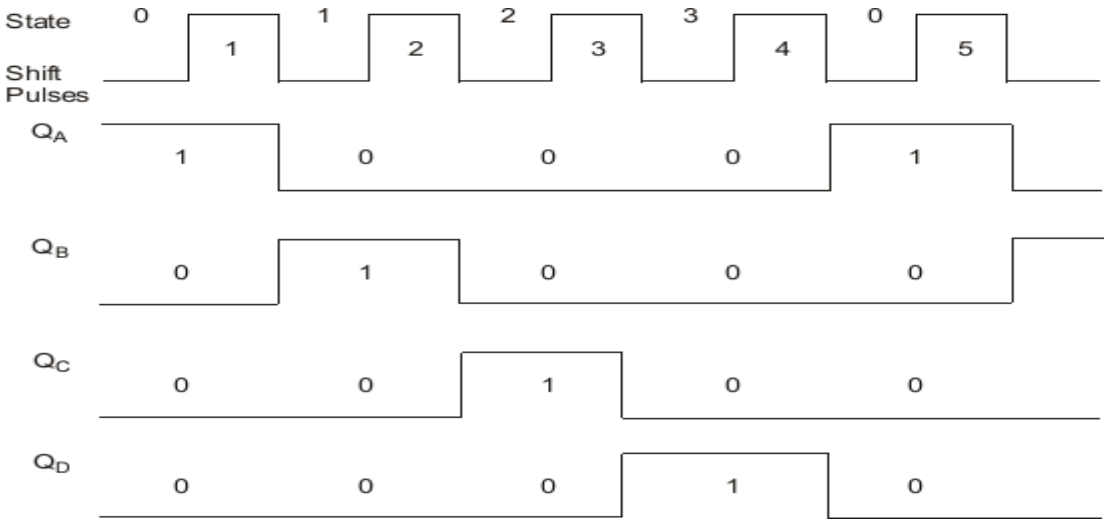


FIGURE: logic diagram of 4-bit ring counter using D flip-flops

Only a single 1 is in the register and is made to circulate around the register as long as clock pulses are applied. Initially the first FF is present to a 1. So, the initial state is 1000, i.e., Q1=1, Q2=0,Q3=0,Q4=0. After each clock pulse, the contents of the register are shifted to the right by one bit and Q4 is shifted back to Q1. The sequence repeats after four clock pulses. The number

of distinct states in the ring counter, i.e., the mod of the ring counter is equal to number of FFs used in the counter. An n-bit ring counter can count only n bits, where as n-bit ripple counter can count 2^n bits. So, the ring counter is uneconomical compared to a ripple counter but has advantage of requiring no decoder, since we can read the count by simply noting which FF is set. Since it is entirely a synchronous operation and requires no gates external FFs, it has the further advantage of being very fast.

Timing diagram:



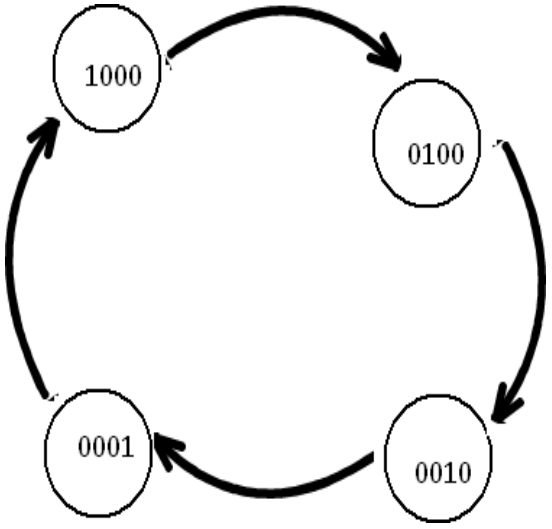


Figure: state diagram

Twisted Ring counter (Johnson counter):

This counter is obtained from a serial-in, serial-out shift register by providing feedback from the inverted output of the last FF to the D input of the first FF. the Q output of each is connected to the D input of the next stage, but the Q‘ output of the last stage is connected to the D input of the first stage, therefore, the name twisted ring counter. This feedback arrangement produces a unique sequence of states.

The logic diagram of a 4-bit Johnson counter using D FF is shown in fig. the realization of the same using J-K FFs is shown in fig.. The state diagram and the sequence table are shown in figure. The timing diagram of a Johnson counter is shown in figure.

Let initially all the FFs be reset, i.e., the state of the counter be 0000. After each clock pulse, the level of Q1 is shifted to Q2, the level of Q2to Q3, Q3 to Q4 and the level of Q4‘to Q1 and the sequences given in fig.

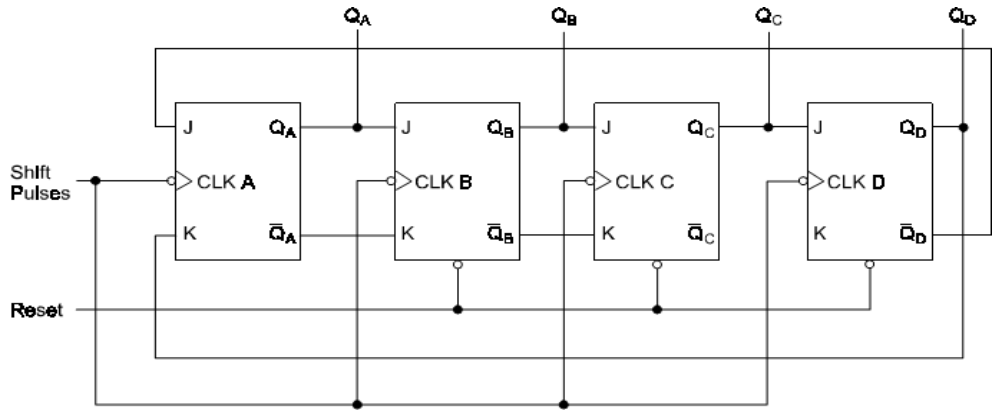


Figure: Johnson counter with JK flip-flops

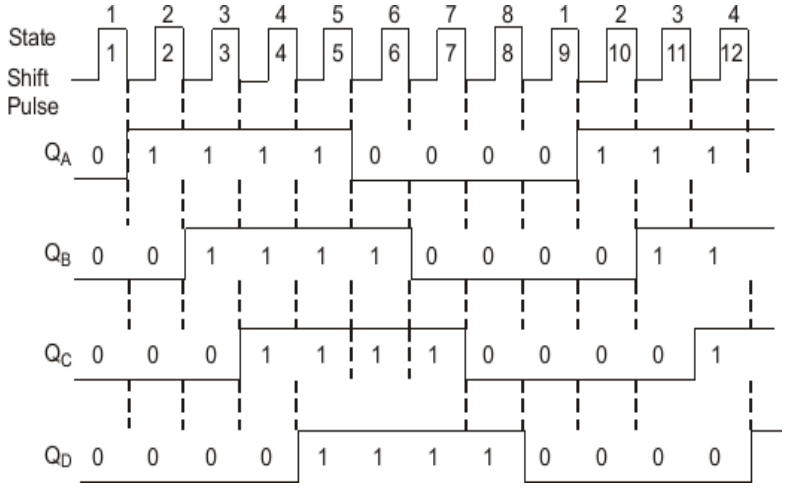
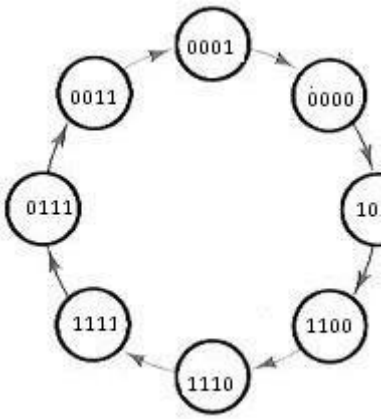


Figure: timing diagram

State diagram:



Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	after clock pulse
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1
1	1	0	0	2
1	1	1	0	3
1	1	1	1	4
0	1	1	1	5
0	0	1	1	6
0	0	0	1	7
0	0	0	0	8
1	0	0	0	9

Excitation table

Synthesis of sequential circuits:

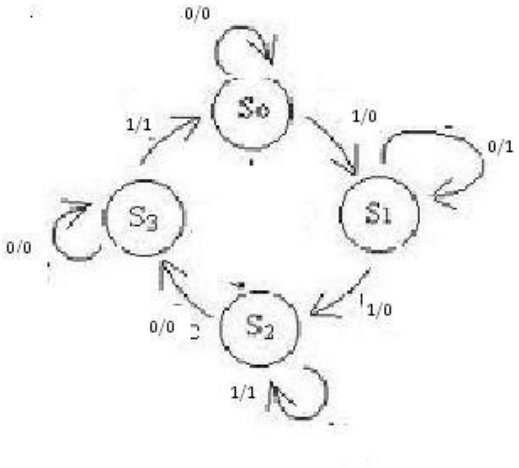
The synchronous or clocked sequential circuits are represented by two models.

1. Moore circuit: in this model, the output depends only on the present state of the flip-flops
2. Meelay circuit: in this model, the output depends on both present state of the flip-flop. And the inputs.

Sequential circuits are also called finite state machines (FSMs). This name is due to the fast that the functional behavior of these circuits can be represented using a finite number of states.

State diagram: the state diagram or state graph is a pictorial representation of the relationships between the present state, the input, the next state, and the output of a sequential circuit. The state diagram is a pictorial representation of the behavior of a sequential circuit.

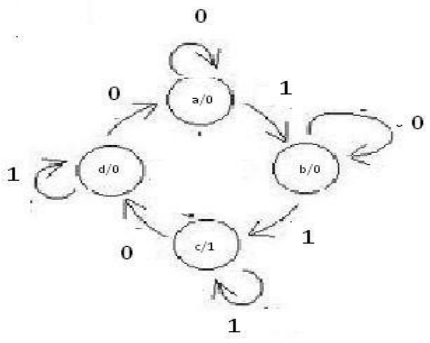
The state represented by a circle also called the node or vertex and the transition between states is indicated by directed lines connecting circle. a directed line connecting a circle with itself indicates that the next state is the same as the present state. The binary number inside each circle identifies the state represented by the circle. The direct lines are labeled with two binary numbers separated by a symbol. The input value is applied during the present state is labeled after the symbol.



	NS,O/P	
	INPUT X	
PS	X=0	X=1
a	a,0	b,0
b	b,1	c,0
c	d,0	c,1
d	d,0	a,1

Fig :a) state diagram (meelay circuit) fig: b) state table

In case of moore circuit ,the directed lines are labeled with only one binary number representing the input that causes the state transition. The output is indicated with in the circle below the present state, because the output depends only on the present state and not on the input.



	NS		
	INPUT X		
PS	X=0	X=1	O/P
a	a	b	0
b	b	c	0
c	d	c	1
d	a	d	0

Fig: a) state diagram (moore circuit) fig:b) state table

Serial binary adder:

Step1: word statement of the problem: the block diagram of a serial binary adder is shown in fig. it is a synchronous circuit with two input terminals designated X1and X2 which carry the two binary numbers to be added and one output terminal Z which represents the sum. The inputs and outputs consist of fixed-length sequences 0s and 1s.the output of the serial Z_i at time $t_i$is a function of the inputs $X_1(t_i)$ and $X_2(t_i)$ at that time t_{i-1} and of carry which had been generated at t_{i-1}. The carry which represent the past history of the serial adder may be a 0 or 1. The circuit has two states. If one state indicates that carry from the previous addition is a 0, the other state indicates that the carry from the previous addition is a 1

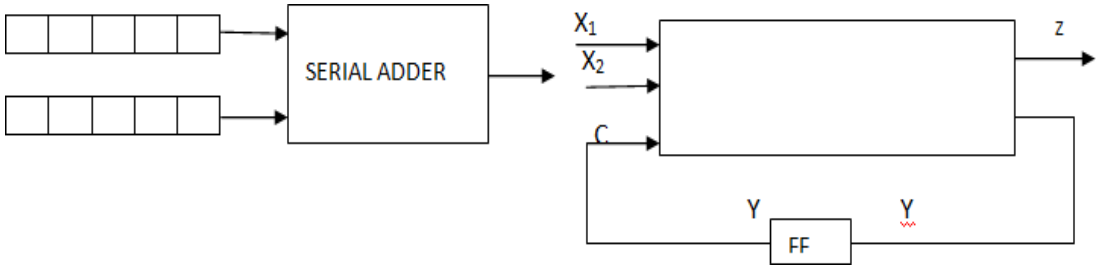
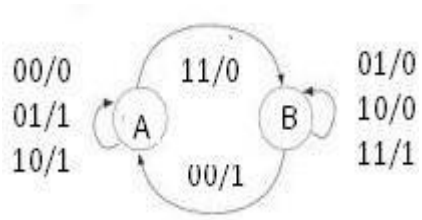


Figure: block diagram of serial binary adder

Step2 and 3: state diagram and state table: let a designate the state of the serial adder at t_i if a carry 0 was generated at t_{i-1}, and let b designate the state of the serial adder at t_i if carry 1 was generated at t_{i-1} .the state of the adder at that time when the present inputs are applied is referred to as the present state(PS) and the state to which the adder goes as a result of the new carry value is referred to as next state(NS).

The behavior of serial adder may be described by the state diagram and state table.



PS	NS ,O/P			
	X1 X2			
	0	0	1	1
	0	1	0	1
A	A,0	B,0	B,1	B,0
B	A,1	B,0	B,0	B,1

Figures: serial adder state diagram and state table

If the machine is in state B, i.e., carry from the previous addition is a 1, inputs X_1=0 and X_2=1 gives sum, 0 and carry 1. So the machine remains in state B and outputs a 0. Inputs X_1=1 and X_2=0 gives sum, 0 and carry 1. So the machine remains in state B and outputs a 0. Inputs X_1=1 and X_2=1 gives sum, 1 and carry 0. So the machine remains in state B and outputs a 1. Inputs X_1=0 and X_2=0 gives sum, 1 and carry 0. So the machine goes to state A and outputs a 1. The state table also gives the same information.

Setp4: reduced standard from state table: the machine is already in this form. So no need to do anything

Step5: state assignment and transition and output table:

The states, A=0 and B=1 have already been assigned. So, the transition and output table is as shown.

PS	**NS**				**O/P**			
	0	**0**	**1**	**1**	**0**	**0**	**1**	**1**
	0	**1**	**0**	**1**	**0**	**1**	**0**	**1**
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1
1	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1

STEP6: choose type of FF and excitation table: to write table, select the memory element the excitation table is as shown in fig.

PS	I/P		NS	I/P-FF	O/P
y	x1	x2	Y	D	Z
0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0	0	1
0	1	0	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	1	1	0
1	1	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	1	1	1

MODULE V
Sequential Logic Circuits – II

Steps in the design process for sequential circuits

- State Diagrams and State Tables
- Examples

- Steps in Design of a Sequential Circuit

1. Specification – A description of the sequential circuit. Should include a detailing of the inputs, the outputs, and the operation. Possibly assumes that you have knowledge of digital system basics.
2. Formulation: Generate a state diagram and/or a state table from the statement of the problem.
3. State Assignment: From a state table assign binary codes to the states.
4. Flip-flop Input Equation Generation: Select the type of flip-flop for the circuit and generate the needed input for the required state transitions
5. Output Equation Generation: Derive output logic equations for generation of the output from the inputs and current state.
6. Optimization: Optimize the input and output equations. Today, CAD systems are typically used for this in real systems.
7. Technology Mapping: Generate a logic diagram of the circuit using ANDs, ORs, Inverters, and F/Fs.
8. Verification: Use a HDL to verify the design.

Mealy and Moore

- Sequential machines are typically classified as either a Mealy machine or a Moore machine implementation.
- Moore machine: The outputs of the circuit depend only upon the current state of the circuit.
- Mealy machine: The outputs of the circuit depend upon both the current state of the circuit and the inputs.

An example to go through the steps

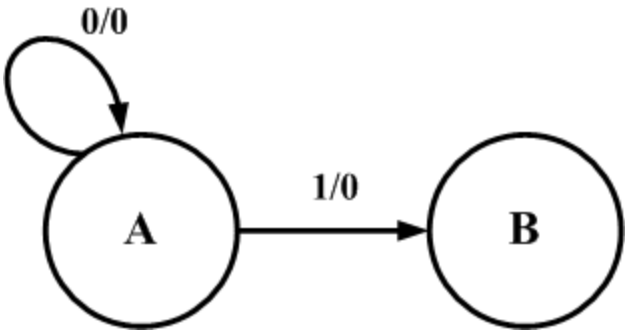
The specification: The circuit will have one input, X, and one output, Z. The output Z will be 0 except when the input sequence 1101 are the last 4 inputs received on X. In that case it will be a 1

Generation of a state diagram

- Create states and meaning for them.

State A – the last input was a 0 and previous inputs unknown. Can also be the reset state.
State B – the last input was a 1 and the previous input was a 0. The start of a new sequence possibly.

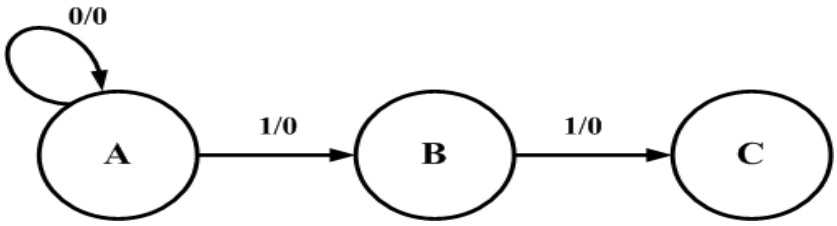
- Capture this in a state diagram



Capture this in a state diagram

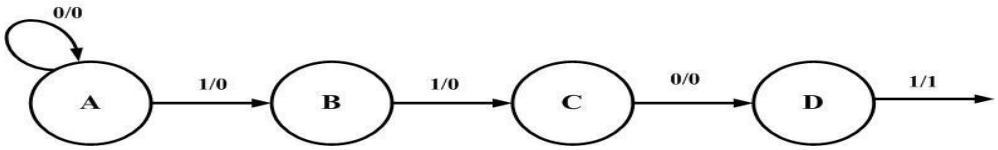
Circles represent the states
Lines and arcs represent the transition between states.
The notation Input/output on the line or arc specifies the input that causes this transition and the output for this change of state.

- Add a state C – Have detected the input sequence 11 which is the start of the sequence



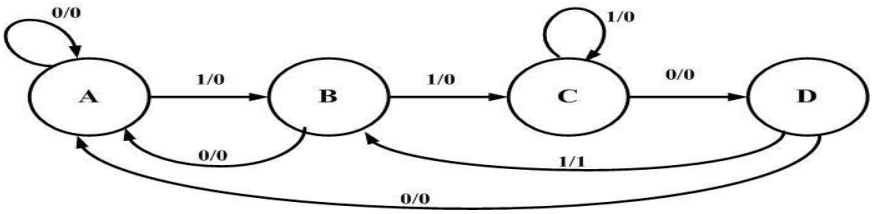
Add a state D

State D – have detected the 3rd input in the start of a sequence, a 0, now having 110. From State D, if the next input is a 1 the sequence has been detected and a 1 is output.



The previous diagram was incomplete.

In each state the next input could be a 0 or a 1. This must be included



- The state table
- This can be done directly from the state diagram

Prresent State	Next State X =0	Next State X=1	Output X=0	Output X=1
A	A	B	0	0
B	A	C	0	0
C	D	C	0	0
D	A	B	0	1

- Now need to do a state assignment

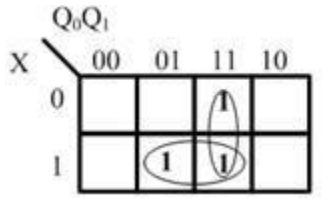
Select a state assignment

- Will select a gray encoding
- For this state A will be encoded 00, state B 01, state C 11 and state D 10

Prresent State	Next State X =0	Next State X=1	Output X=0	Output X=1
00	00	01	0	0
01	00	11	0	0
11	10	11	0	0
10	00	01	0	1

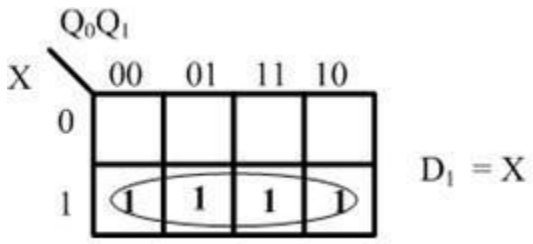
Flip-flop input equations

- Generate the equations for the flip-flop inputs
- Generate the D_0 equation



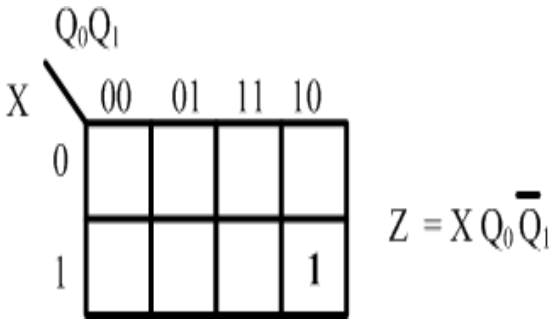
$D_0 = Q_0 Q_1 + X Q_1$

- Generate the D_1 equation



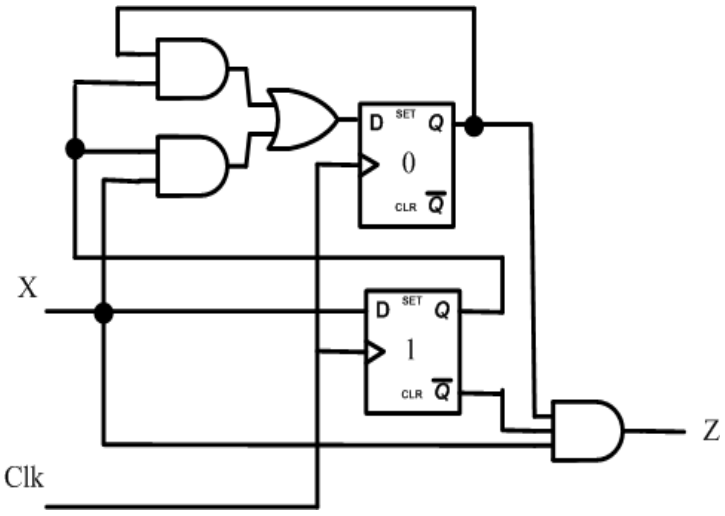
The output equation

- The next step is to generate the equation for the output Z and what is needed to generate it.
- Create a K-map from the truth table.



Now map to a circuit

- The circuit has 2 D type F/Fs

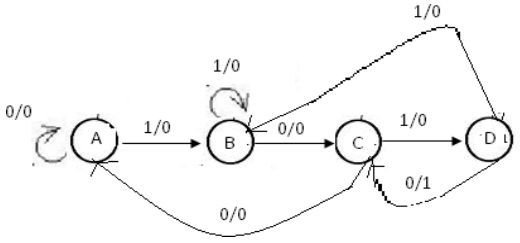


Sequence detector:

Step1: word statement of the problem: a sequence detector is a sequential machine which produces an output 1 every time the desired sequence is detected and an output 0 at all other times

Suppose we want to design a sequence detector to detect the sequence 1010 and say that overlapping is permitted i.e., for example, if the input sequence is 01101010 the corresponding output sequence is 00000101.

Step2 and 3: state diagram and state table: the state diagram and the state table of the sequence detector. At the time t_1, the machine is assumed to be in the initial state designed arbitrarily as A. while in this state, the machine can receive first bit input, either a 0 o r a 1. If the input bit is 0, the machine does not start the detection process because the first bit in the desired sequence is a 1. If the input bit is a 1 the detection process starts.



PS	NS,Z	
	X=0	X=1
A	A,0	B,0
B	C,0	B,0
C	A,0	D,0
D	C,1	B,0

Figure: state diagram and state table of sequence detector

So, the machine goes to state B and outputs a 0. While in state B, the machinery may receive 0 or 1 bit. If the bit is 0, the machine goes to the next state, say state c, because the previous two bits are 10 which are a part of the valid sequence, and outputs 0.. if the bit is a 1, the two bits become 11 and this not a part of the valid sequence

Step4: reduced standard form state table: the machine is already in this form. So no need to do anything.

Step5: state assignment and transition and output table: there are four states therefore two states variables are required. Two state variables can have a maximum of four states, so, all states are utilized and thus there are no invalid states. Hence, there are no don‘t cares. Let a=00, B=01, C=10 and D=11 be the state assignment.

	NS(Y1Y2)		O/P(z)	
PS(y1y2	X=0	X=1	X=0	X=1
A= 0 0	0 0	0 1	0	0
B=0 1	1 0	0 1	0	0
C=1 0	0 0	1 1	0	0
D=1 1	1 1	0 1	1	0

Step6: choose type of flip-flops and form the excitation table: select the D flip-flops as memory elements and draw the excitation table.

PS		I/P	NS		INPUTS - FFS		O/P
y1	Y2	X	Y1	Y2	D1	D2	Z
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
0	1	0	1	0	1	0	0
0	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0
1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0

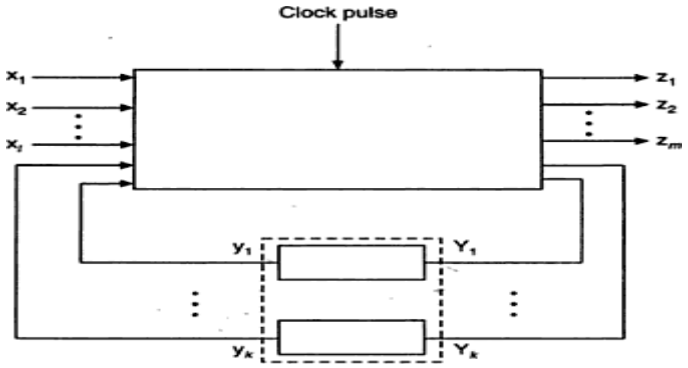
Step7: K-maps and minimal functions: based on the contents of the excitation table , draw the k-map and simplify them to obtain the minimal expressions for D1 and D2 in terms of y1, y2 and x as shown in fig. The expression for z (z=y1,y2) can be obtained directly from table

Step8: implementation: the logic diagram based on these minimal expressions

Finite State Machine:

Finite state machine can be defined as a type of machine whose past histories can affect its future behavior in a finite number of ways. To clarify, consider for example of binary full adder. Its output depends on the present input and the carry generated from the previous input. It may have a large number of previous input histories but they can be divided into two types: (i) Input

The most general model of a sequential circuit has inputs, outputs and internal states. A sequential circuit is referred to as a finite state machine (FSM). A finite state machine is abstract model that describes the synchronous sequential machine. The fig. shows the block diagram of a finite state model. X_1, X2,….., X_l, are inputs. Z_1, Z2,….,Z_m are outputs. Y_1,Y_2,….Y_k are state variables, and Y_1,Y_2,….Y_k represent the next state.



Capabilities and limitations of finite-state machine

Let a finite state machine have n states. Let a long sequence of input be given to the machine. The machine will progress starting from its beginning state to the next states according to the state transitions. However, after some time the input string may be longer than n, the number of states. As there are only n states in the machine, it must come to a state it was previously been in and from this phase if the input remains the same the machine will function in a periodically repeating fashion. From here a conclusion that _for a n state machine the output will become periodic after a number of clock pulses less than equal to n can be drawn. States are memory elements. As for a finite state machine the number of states is finite, so finite number of memory elements are required to design a finite state machine.

Limitations:

1. Periodic sequence and limitations of finite states: with n-state machines, we can generate periodic sequences of n states are smaller than n states. For example, in a 6-state machine, we can have a maximum periodic sequence as 0,1,2,3,4,5,0,1….

2. No infinite sequence: consider an infinite sequence such that the output is 1 when and only when the number of inputs received so far is equal to P(P+1)/2 for P=1,2,3….,i.e., the desired input-output sequence has the following form:

Input: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x
Output: 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 1

Such an infinite sequence cannot be produced by a finite state machine.

3. Limited memory: the finite state machine has a limited memory and due to limited memory it cannot produce certain outputs. Consider a binary multiplier circuit for multiplying two arbitrarily large binary numbers. The memory is not sufficient to store arbitrarily large partial products resulted duringmultiplication.

   Finite state machines are two types. They differ in the way the output is generate they are:

   1. Mealy type model: in this model, the output is a function of the present state and the present input.
   2. Moore type model: in this model, the output is a function of the present state only.

Mathematical representation of synchronous sequential machine:

The relation between the present state S(t), present input X(t), and next state s(t+1) can be given as

$S(t+1)= f\{S(t),X(t)\}$

The value of output Z(t) can be given as

$Z(t)= g\{S(t),X(t)\}$ for mealy model

$Z(t)= G\{S(t)\}$ for Moore model

Because, in a mealy machine, the output depends on the present state and input, where as in a Moore machine, the output depends only on the present state.

Comparison between the Moore machine and mealy machine:

Moore machine	mealy machine
1. its output is a function of present state only $Z(t)= g\{S(t)\}$	1. its output is a function of present state as well as present input $Z(t)=g\{S(t),X(t)\}$
2. input changes do not affect the output	2. input changes may affect the output of the circuit
3. it requires more number of states for implementing same function	3. it requires less number of states for implementing same function

Mealy model:

When the output of the sequential circuit depends on the both the present state of the flip-flops and on the inputs, the sequential circuit is referred to as mealy circuit or mealy machine.

The fig. shows the logic diagram of the mealy model. Notice that the output depends up on the present state as well as the present inputs. We can easily realize that changes in the input during the clock pulse cannot affect the state of the flip-flop. They can affect the output of the circuit. If the input variations are not synchronized with a clock, he derived output will also not be synchronized with the clock and we get false output. The false outputs can be eliminated by allowing input to change only at the active transition of the clock.

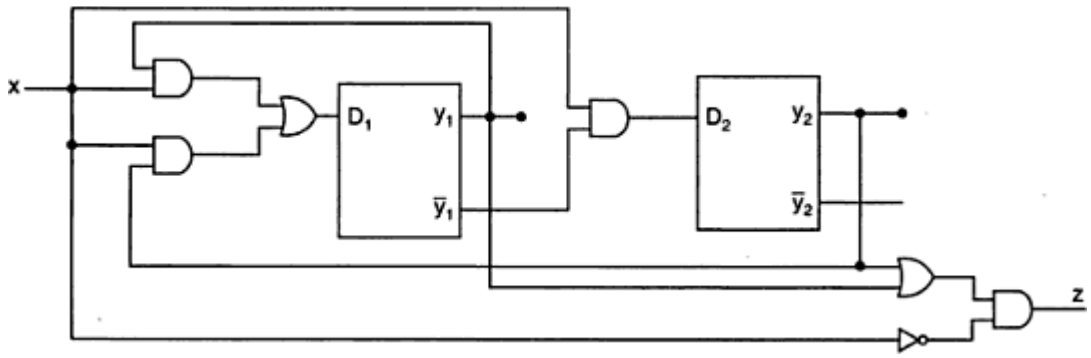


Fig: logic diagram of a mealy model

The behavior of a clocked sequential circuit can be described algebraically by means of state equations. A state equation specifies the next state as a function of the present state and inputs. The mealy model shown in fig. consists of two D flip-flops, an input x and an output z. since the D input of a flip-flop determines the value of the next state, the state equations for the model can be written as

$Y_1 (t+1)=y_1(t)x(t)+y_2(t)x(t)$

$Y_2(t+1)= 1(t)x(t)$

And the output equation is

$$Z(t)=\{ y_1(t)+y_2(t)\} X'(t)$$

Where y(t+1) is the next state of the flip-flop one clock edge later, x(t) is the present input, and z(t) is the present output. If y1(t+1) are represented by y1(t) and y2(t) , in more compact form, the equations are

Y1(t+1)=y1=y1x+y2x

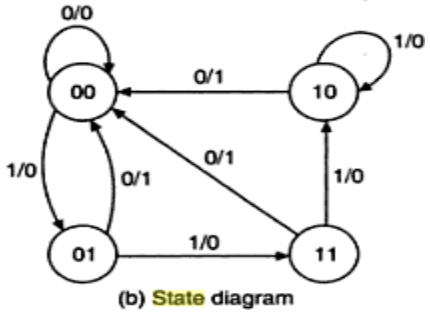
Y2(t+1)=y2=y1'x

Z=(y1+y2)x'

The stable table of the mealy model based on the above state equations and output equation is shown in fig. the state diagram based on the state table is shown in fig.

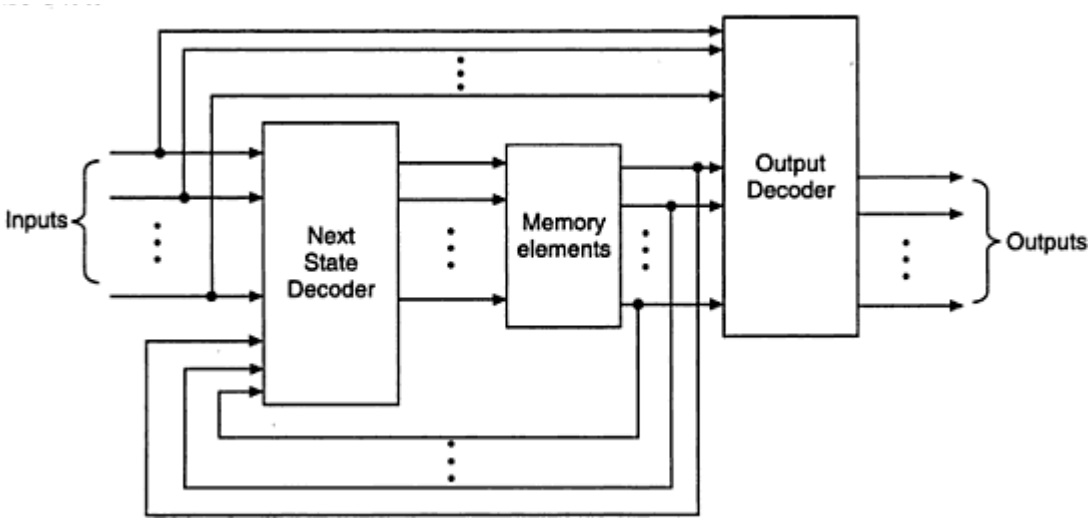
PS		NS				O/P	
		x = 0		x = 1		x = 0	x = 1
y_1	y_2	Y_1	Y_2	Y_1	Y_2	z	z
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
0	1	0	0	1	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0

(a) State table



(b) State diagram

In general form, the mealy circuit can be represented with its block schematic as shown in below fig.



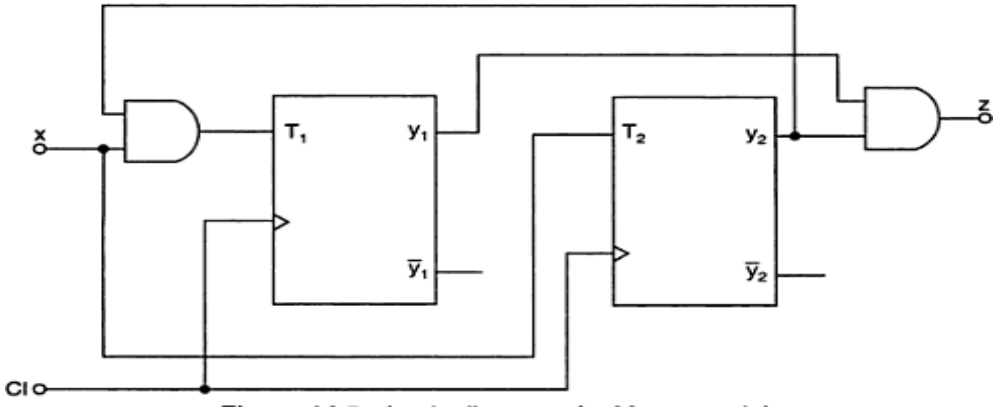
Moore model: when the output of the sequential circuit depends up only on the present state of the flip-flop, the sequential circuit is referred as to as the Moore circuit or the Moore machine.

Notice that the output depend only on the present state. It does not depend upon the input at all. The input is used only to determine the inputs of flip-flops. It is not used to determine the output. The circuit shown has two T flip-flops, one input x, and one output z. it can be described algebraically by two input equations an output equation.

$T_1=y_2x$

$T_2=x$

$Z=y_1y_2$



The characteristic equation of a T-flip-flop is

$$Q(t+1)=TQ'+T'Q$$

The values for the next state can be derived from the state equations by substituting T_1 and T_2 in the characteristic equation yielding

$Y_1(t+1)=Y_1=(y_2x) \oplus =(\ 2\ )y1+(y2x)\ 1$

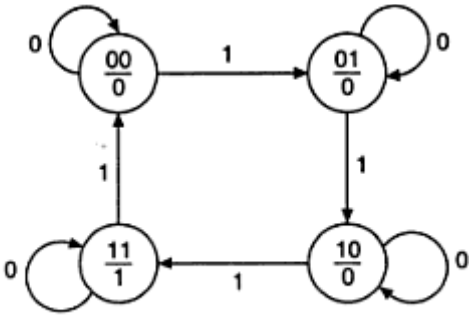
$= y1\ 2+\ y1\ +\ 1y2x$

$= y2\ (t+1)= x \oplus y2= x\ 2+\ y2$

The state table of the Moore model based on the above state equations and output equation is shown in fig.

PS		NS				O/P
		x = 0		x = 1		
y_1	y_2	Y_1	Y_2	Y_1	Y_2	z
0	0	0	0	0	1	0
0	1	0	1	1	0	0
1	0	1	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	1	0	0	1

(a) State table



(b) State diagram

In general form , the Moore circuit can be represented with its block schematic as shown in below fig.

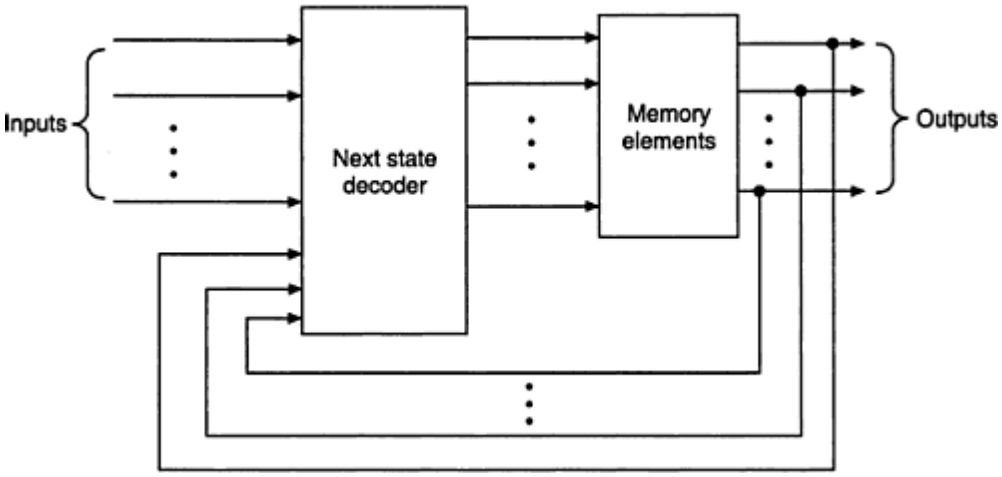


Figure: moore circuit model:

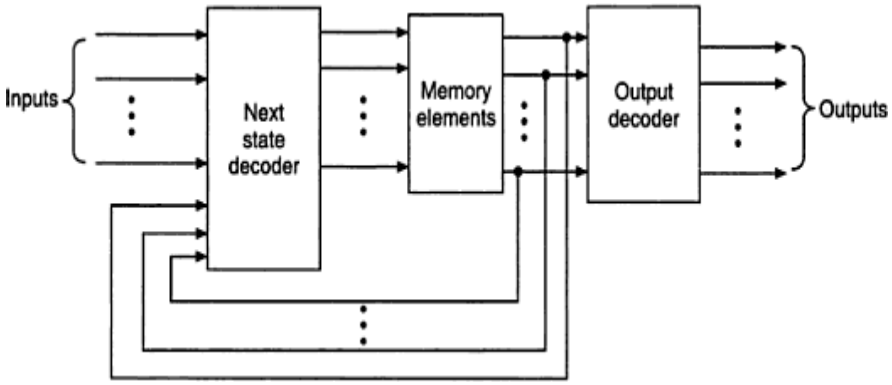
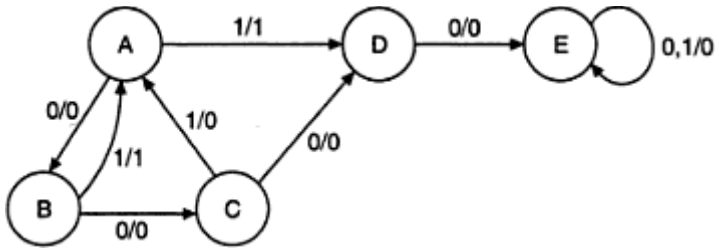


Figure: moore circuit model with an output decoder

Important definitions and theorems:

A). Finite state machine-definitions:

Consider the state diagram of a finite state machine shown in fig. it is five-state machine with one input variable and one output variable.



Successor: looking at the state diagram when present state is A and input is 1, the next state is D. this condition is specified as D is the successor of A. similarly we can say that A is the 1 successor of B, and C,D is the 11 successor of B and C, C is the 00 successor of A and D, D is the 000 successor of A,E, is the 10 successor of A or 0000 successor of A and so on.

Terminal state: looking at the state diagram , we observe that no such input sequence exists which can take the sequential machine out of state E and thus state E is said to be a terminal state.

Strongly-connected machine: in sequential machines many times certain subsets of states may not be reachable from other subsets of states. Even if the machine does not contain any terminal state. If for every pair of states s_i, s_j, of a sequential machine there exists an input sequence which takes the machine M from s_i to sj, then the sequential machine is said to be strongly connected.

B). state equivalence and machine minimization:

In realizing the logic diagram from a stat table or state diagram many times we come across redundant states. Redundant states are states whose functions can be accomplished by other states. The elimination of redundant states reduces the total number of states of the machines which in turn results in reduction of the number of flip-flops and logic gates, reducing the cost of the final circuit.

Two states are said to be equivalent. When two states are equivalent, one of them can be removed without altering the input output relationship.

State equivalence theorem: it states that two states s_1, and s_2 are equivalent if for every possible input sequence applied. The machine goes to the same next state and generates the same output. That is

If $S_1(t+1)= s_2(t+1)$ and $z_1=z_2$, then $s_1=s_2$

C). distinguishable states and distinguishing sequences:

Two states s_a, and s_b of a sequential machine are distinguishable, if and only if there exists at least one finite input sequence which when applied to the sequential machine causes different outputs sequences depending on weather s_a or s_b is the initial state.

Consider states A and B in the state table, when input X=0, their outputs are 0 and 1 respectively and therefore, states A and B are called 1-distinguishabke. Now consider states A and E . the output sequence is as follows.

X=0 A C,0 and E D, 0 ; outputs are the same

C → E,0 and D → b,1 ; outputs are different

Here the outputs are different after 2-state transition and hence states A and E are 2- distungishable. Again consider states A and C . the output sequence is as follows:

X=0 A → C,0 and C → E, 0; outputs are the same

C → E,0 and E → D,0 ; outputs are the same E D,0 and D B,1 ; outputs are different

Here the outputs are different after 3- transition and hence states A and B are 3-distuingshable. the concept of K- distuingshable leads directly to the definition of K-equivalence. States that are not K-distinguishable are said to be K-equivalent.

Truth table for Distunigshable states:

PS	NS,Z	
	X=0	X=1
A	C,0	F,0
B	D,1	F,0
C	E,0	B,0
D	B,1	E,0
E	D,0	B,0
F	D,1	B,0

Merger Chart Methods:

Merger graphs:

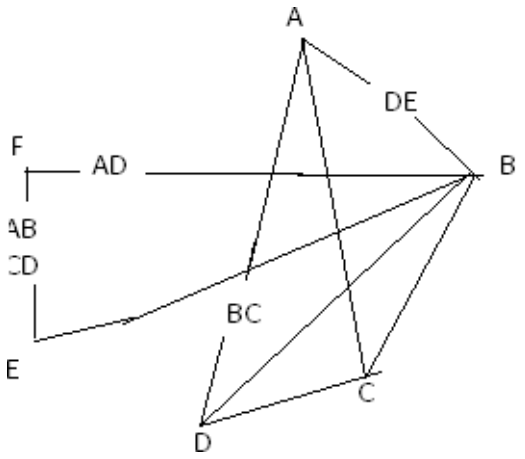
The merger graph is a state reducing tool used to reduce states in the incompletely specified machine. The merger graph is defined as follows.

1. Each state in the state table is represented by a vertex in the merger graph. So it contains the same number of vertices as the state table contains states.
2. Each compatible state pair is indicated by an unbroken line draw between the two state vertices
3. Every potentially compatible state pair with non-conflicting outputs but with different next states is connected by a broken line. The implied states are written in theline break between the two potentially compatible states.
4. If two states are incompatible no connecting line is drawn.

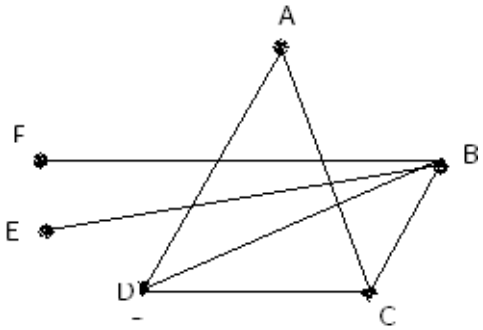
Consider a state table of an incompletely specified machine shown in fig. the corresponding merger graph shown in fig.

State table:

PS			NS,Z	
	I1	**I2**	**I3**	**I4**
A	…	E,1	B,1	….
B	…	D,1	…	F,1
C	F,1	…	…	…
D	…	…	C,1	…
E	C,0	…	A,0	F,1
F	D,0	A,1	B,0	…



a) Merger graph



b) simplified merger graph

States A and B have non-conflicting outputs, but the successor under input $I_2$are compatible only if implied states D and E are compatible. So, draw a broken line from A to B with DE written in between states A and C are compatible because the next states and output entries of states A and C are not conflicting. Therefore, a line is drawn between nodes A and C. states A and D have non-conflicting outputs but the successor under input I_3 are B and C. hence join A and D by a broken line with BC entered In between.

Two states are said to be incompatible if no line is drawn between them. If implied states are incompatible, they are crossed and the corresponding line is ignored. Like, implied states D and E are incompatible, so states A and B are also incompatible. Next, it is necessary to check whether the incompatibility of A and B does not invalidate any other broken line. Observe that states E and F also become incompatible because the implied pair AB is incompatible. The broken lines which remain in the graph after all the implied pairs have been verified to be compatible are regarded as complete lines.

After checking all possibilities of incompatibility, the merger graph gives the following seven compatible pairs.

(A, C) (A, D) (B, C) (B, D) (C, D) (B, E) (B, F)

These compatible pairs are further checked for further compatibility. For example, pairs (B,C)(B,D)(C,D) are compatible. So (B, C, D) is also compatible. Also pairs (A,c)(A,D)(C,D) are compatible. So (A,C,D) is also compatible. . In this way the entire set of compatibles of sequential machine can be generated from its compatible pairs.

To find the minimal set of compatibles for state reduction, it is useful to find what are called the maximal compatibles. A set of compatibles state pairs is said to be maximal, if it is not completely covered by any other set of compatible state pairs. The maximum compatible can be found by looking at the merger graph for polygons which are not contained within any higher order complete polygons. For example only triangles (A, C,D) and (B,C,D) are of higher order. The set of maximal compatibles for this sequential machine given as

(A, C, D) (B, C, D) (B, E) (B, F)

Example:

Draw the merger graph and obtain the set of maximal compatibles for the incompletely specified sequential machine whose state table is given in Table 7.24.

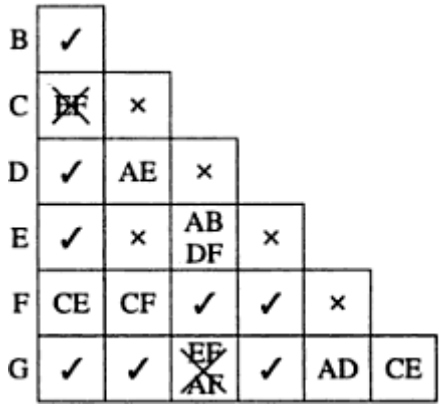
Table 7.24 Example 7.9: State table

PS	NS, Z	
	I_1	I_2
A	E, 0	B, 0
B	F, 0	A, 0
C	E, –	C, 0
D	F, 1	D, 0
E	C, 1	C, 0
F	D, –	B, 0

mark × in the corresponding cell. For example, states B and C are incompatible because their outputs are conflicting and hence the cell corresponding to them contains a cross mark ×. Similarly states B, E; D, E; E, F are incompatible. Hence put a × mark in the corresponding cells. On the other hand, states A and B are compatible and hence the cell corresponding to them contains the check mark ✓. Similarly, cells corresponding to states A, D; A ,E; A, G; B, G; C, F; D, F ; D, G are also compatible. So a check mark is put in those cells also. The implied pairs or pairs corresponding to the state pair are written within the cell as shown in Table 7.26. For example, states A and C are compatible only when implied states E and F are compatible. Therefore, EF is written in the cell corresponding to states A and C. States C and E are compatible only when implied states A and B, and D and F are compatible. So AB and DF are written in the cell corresponding to states C and E. In a similar way, the entire merger table is written. Now it is necessary to check whether the implied pairs are compatible or not by observing the merger table. The implied states are incompatible if the corresponding cell contains a ×. For example, implied pair E, F is incompatible because cell EF contains a ×. Similarly, implied pairs EF, AF are incompatible because EF contains a ×. It is indicated by a ×.

PS	NS, Z			
	00	01	11	10
A	E, 0	–	–	–
B	–	F, 1	E, 1	A, 1
C	F, 0	–	A, 0	F, 1
D	–	–	A, 1	–
E	–	C, 0	B, 0	D, 1
F	C, 0	C, 1	–	–
G	E, 0	–	–	A, 1

Figure: state table



State Minimization:
Completely Specified Machines

- Two states, s_i and s_j of machine M are *distinguishable* if and only if there exists a finite input sequence which when applied to M causes different output sequences depending on whether M started in s_i or s_j.
- Such a sequence is called a *distinguishing sequence* for (s_i, s_j).
- If there exists a distinguishing sequence of length k for (s_i, s_j), they are said to be *k-distinguishable*.

EXAMPLE:

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
A	E, 0	D, 1
B	F, 0	D, 0
C	E, 0	B, 1
D	F, 0	B, 0
E	C, 0	F, 1
F	B, 0	C, 0

- states A and B are 1-distinguishable, since a 1 input applied to A yields an output 1, versus an output 0 from B.
- states A and E are 3-distinguishable, since input sequence 111 applied to A yields output 100, versus an output 101 from E.
- States s_i and s_j ($s_i \sim s_j$) are said to be equivalent iff no distinguishing sequence exists for (s_i, s_j).
- If $s_i \sim s_j$ and $s_j \sim s_k$, then $s_i \sim s_k$. So state equivalence is an equivalence relation (i.e. it is a reflexive, symmetric and transitive relation).
- An equivalence relation partitions the elements of a set into equivalence classes.
- Property: If $s_i \sim s_j$, their corresponding X-successors, for all inputs X, are also equivalent.
- Procedure: Group states of *M* so that two states are in the same group iff they are equivalent (forms a partition of the states).

Completely Specified Machines

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
A	E, 0	D, 1
B	F, 0	D, 0
C	E, 0	B, 1
D	F, 0	B, 0
E	C, 0	F, 1
F	B, 0	C, 0

P_i : partition using distinguishing sequences of length *i*.

Partition:	Distinguishing Sequence:
P_0 = (A B C D E F)	
P_1 = (A C E)(B D F)	x =1
P_2 = (A C E)(B D)(F)	x =1; x =1
P_3 = (A C)(E)(B D)(F)	x =1; x =1; x =1
P_4 = (A C)(E)(B D)(F)	

Algorithm terminates when $P_k = P_{K+1}$

Outline of state minimization procedure:

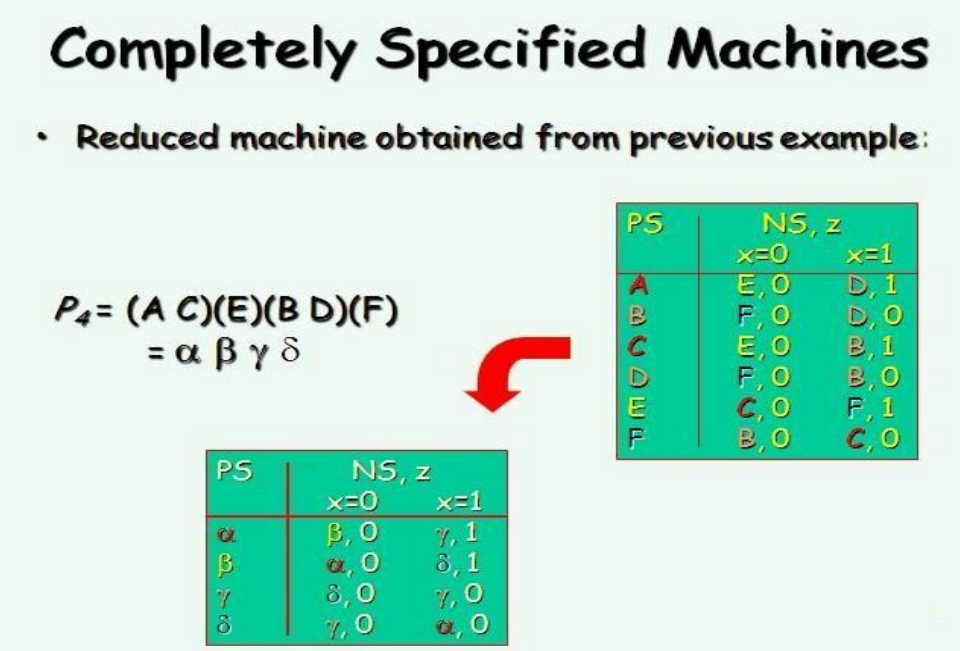
- All states equivalent to each other form an equivalence class. These may becombined into one state in the reduced (quotient) machine.
- Start an initial partition of a single block. Iteratively refine this partition by separating the 1-distinguishable states, 2-distinguishable states and so on.
- To obtain P_{k+1}, for each block B_i of P_k, create one block of states that not 1-distinguishable within B_i, and create different blocks states that are1-distinguishable within B_i.

Theorem: The equivalence partition is unique.

Theorem: If two states, s_i and s_j, of machine *M* are distinguishable, then they are (*n-1*)-distinguishable, where *n* is the number of states in *M*.

Definition: Two machines, M_1 and M_2, are *equivalent* ($M_1 \sim M_2$) if, for every state in M_1 there is a corresponding equivalent state in M_2 and vice versa.

Theorem. For every machine M there is a minimum machine $M_{red} \sim M$. M_{red} is unique up to isomorphism.



State Minimization of CSMs: Complexity
Algorithm DFA ~ DFA_{min}
Input: A finite automaton $M = (Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, F)$ with no unreachable states.
Output: A minimum finite automaton $M' = (Q', \Sigma, \delta', q'_0, F')$.
Method:
1. $t := 2$; $Q_0 := \{$ undefined $\}$; $Q_1 := F$; $Q_2 := Q \setminus F$.
2. while there is $0 < i \le t$, $a \in \Sigma$ with $\delta(Q_i,a) \subseteq Q_j$, for all $j \le t$
do (a) Choose such an i, a , and $j \le t$ with $\delta(Q_i,a) \cap Q_j \neq \emptyset$.
(b) $Q_{t+1} := \{q \in Q_i \mid \delta(q,a) \in Q_j\}$;
$Q_i := Q_i \setminus Q_{t+1}$;
$t := t + 1$.
end.
3. (* Denote $[q]$ the equivalence class of state q , and $\{Q_i\}$ the set of all equivalence classes. *)
$Q' := \{Q_1, Q_2, ..., Q_t\}$.
$q'_0 := [q_0]$.
$F' := \{ [q] \in Q' \mid q \in F \}$.
$\delta'([q], a) := [\delta(q,a)]$ for all $q \in Q$, $a \in \Sigma$.

Standard implementation: $O(kn^2)$, where $n = |Q|$ and $k = |\Sigma|$
Modification of the body of the while loop:
1. Choose such an i, $a \in \Sigma$, and choose $j_1, j_2 \le t$ with $j_1 \neq j_2$, $\delta(Q_i,a) \cap Q_{j1} \neq \emptyset$, and $\delta(Q_i,a) \cap Q_{j2} \neq \emptyset$.
2. If $|\{q \in Q_i \mid \delta(q,a) \in Q_{j1}\}| \le |\{q \in Q_i \mid \delta(q,a) \in Q_{j2}\}|$

then $Q_{t+1} := \{q \in Q_i \mid \delta(q,a) \in Q_{j1}\}$
else $Q_{t+1} := \{q \in Q_i \mid \delta(q,a) \in Q_{j2}\}$ fI;
$Q_i := Q_i \setminus Q_{t+1}$;
$t := t + 1$.
(i.e. put smallest set in $t+1$)

Note: $|Q_{t+1}| \leq 1/2|Q_i|$. Therefore, for all q $\in Q$, the name of the class which contains a given state q changes at most log(n) times.

Goal: Develop an implementation such that all computations can be assigned to transitions containing a state for which the name of the corresponding class is changed.
Suitable data structures achieve an O (kn log n) implementation.

State Minimization:

Incompletely Specified Machines

Statement of the problem: given an incompletely specified machine M, find a machine M' such that:

- on any input sequence, M' produces the same outputs as M, whenever M is specified.
- there does not exist a machine M'' with fewer states than M' which has the same property

Machine *M*:

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
s1	s3, 0	s2, 0
s2	s2, -	s3, 0
s3	s3, 1	s2, 0

Attempt to reduce this case to usual state minimization of completely specified machines.

- Brute Force Method: Force the don‘t cares to all their possible values and choosethe smallest of the completely specified machines soobtained.
- In this example, it means to state minimize two completely specified machines obtained from M, by setting the don‘t care to either 0 and 1.

Suppose that the - is set to be a 0.

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
s1	s3, 0	s2, 0
s2	s2, 0	s3, 0
s3	s3, 1	s2, 0

- States s1 and s2 are equivalent if s3 and s2 are equivalent, but s3 and s2 assertdifferent outputs under input 0, so s1 and s2 are not equivalent.
- States s1 and s3 are not equivalent either.

- So this completely specified machine cannot be reduced further (3 states is the minimum).

Suppose that the - is set to be a 1.

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
s1	s3, 0	s2, 0
s2	s2, 1	s3, 0
s3	s3, 1	s2, 0

- States s1 is incompatible with both s2 and s3.
- States s3 and s2 are equivalent.
- So number of states is reduced from 3 to 2.

Machine M''_{red} :

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
A	A, 1	A, 0
B	B, 0	A, 0

Can this always be done?
Machine *M*:

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
s1	s3, 0	s2, 0
s2	s2, -	s1, 0
s3	s1, 1	s2, 0

Machine M_2:

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
s1	s3, 0	s2, 0
s2	s2, 0	s1, 0
s3	s1, 1	s2, 0

Machine M_3:

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
s1	s3, 0	s2, 0
s2	s2, 1	s1, 0
s3	s1, 1	s2, 0

Machine M_2 and M_3 are formed by filling in the unspecified entry in M with 0 and 1, respectively.

Both machines M_2 and M_3 cannot be reduced.
Conclusion?: M cannot be minimized further!
But is it a correct conclusion?
Note: that we want to _merge‘ two states when, for any input sequence, they generate the same output sequence, but only where both outputs are specified.
Definition: A set of states is compatible if they agree on the outputs where they are all specified.
Machine *M’’* :

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
s1	s3, 0	s2, 0
s2	s2, -	s1, 0
s3	s1, 1	s2, 0

In this case we have two compatible sets: A = (s1, s2) and B = (s3, s2). A reduced machine M_{red} can be built as follows.
Machine M_{red}

PS	NS, z	
	x=0	x=1
A	A, 1	A, 0
B	B, 0	A, 0

PS	NS, z			
	I1	I2	I3	I4
s1	s3,0	s1,-	-	-
s2	s6,-	s2,0	s1,-	-
s3	-,1	-,-	s4,0	-
s4	s1,0	-,-	-	s5,1
s5	-,-	s5,-	s2,1	s1,1
s6	-,-	s2,1	s6,-	s4,1

A set of compatibles that cover all states is: (s3s6), (s4s6), (s1s6), (s4s5), (s2s5).
But (s3s6) requires (s4s6),
(s4s6) requires(s4s5), (s4s5) requires (s1s5),
(s1s6) requires (s1s2), (s1s2) requires (s3s6),
(s2s5) requires (s1s2).
So, this selection of compatibles requires too many other compatibles...

PS	NS, z			
	I1	I2	I3	I4
s1	s3,0	s1,-	-	-
s2	s6,-	s2,0	s1,-	-
s3	-,1	-,-	s4,0	-
s4	s1,0	-,-	-	s5,1
s5	-,-	s5,-	s2,1	s1,1
s6	-,-	s2,1	s6,-	s4,1

- Another set of compatibles that covers all states is (s1s2s5), (s3s6), (s4s5).
- But (s1s2s5) requires (s3s6) (s3s6) requires (s4s6)
- (s4s6) requires (s4s5) (s4s5) requires (s1s5).
- So must select also (s4s6) and (s1s5).
- Selection of minimum set is a binate covering problem

When a next state is unspecified, the future behavior of the machine is unpredictable. This suggests the definition of admissible input sequence.

Definition. An input sequence is *admissible,* for a starting state of a machine if no unspecified next state is encountered, except possibly at the final step.

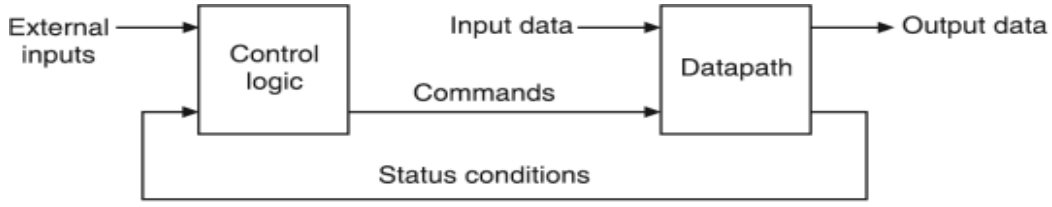
Definition. State s_i of machine M_1 is said to *cover*, or *contain*, state s_j of M_2 provided

1. every input sequence admissible to s_j is also admissible to s_i , and
2. its application to both M_1 and M_2 (initially is s_i and s_j, respectively) results in identical output sequences whenever the outputs of M_2 are specified.

Definition. Machine M_1 is said to cover machine M_2 if for every state s_j in M_2, there is a corresponding state s_i in M_1 such that s_i covers s_j.

Algorithmic State Machines:

- The binary information stored in the digital system can be classified as either data or control information.
- The data information is manipulated by performing arithmetic, logic, shift and other data processing tasks.
- The control information provides the command signals that controls the various operations on the data in order to accomplish the desired data processing task.
- Design a digital system we have to design two subsystems data path subsystem and control subsystem.



Interaction between control logic and datapath.

ASM CHART:

- A special flow chart that has been developed specifically to define digital hardware algorithms is called ASM chart.
- A hardware algorithm is a step by step procedure to implement the desire task.

Difference b/n conventional flow chart and ASM chart:

- conventional flow chart describes the sequence of procedural steps and decision paths for an algorithm without concern for their time relationship
- An ASM chart describes the sequence of events as well as the timing relationship b/n the states of sequential controller and the events that occur while going from one state to the next

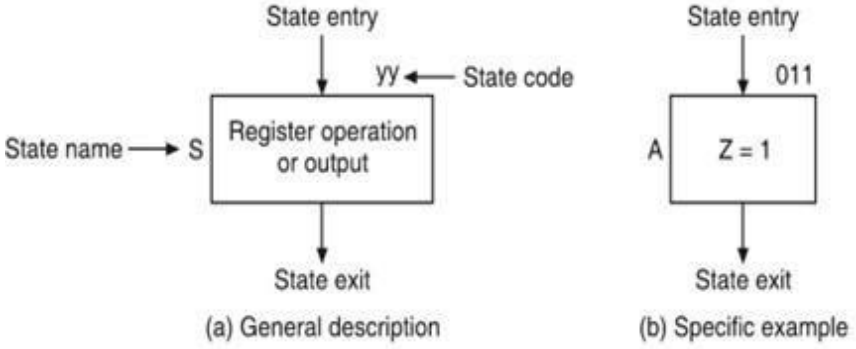
1. State box: A state of a clocked sequential circuit is represented by a rectangle called *state box*. It is equivalent to a node in the state diagram or a row in the state table. The name of the state is written to the left of the box. The binary code assigned to the state is indicated outside on the top right-side of the box. A list of unconditional outputs if any associated with the state are written within the box.

2. Decision box: The decision box or condition box is represented by a diamond-shaped symbol with one input and two or more output paths. The output branches are true and false branches. The decision box describes the effect of an input on the control subsystem. A Boolean variable or input or expression written inside the diamond indicates a condition which is evaluated to determine which branch to take.

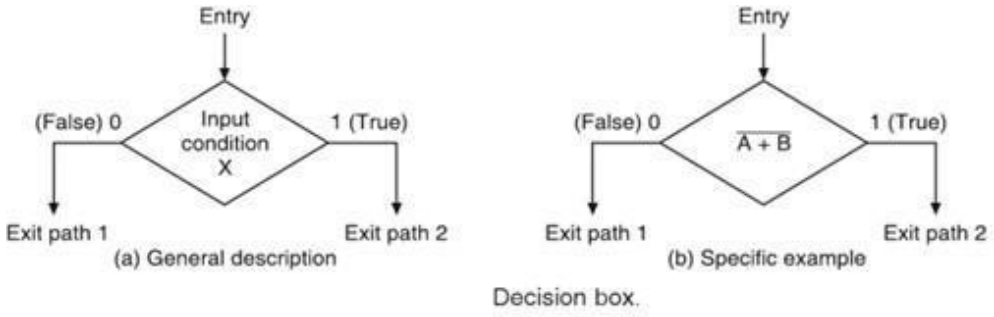
ASM consists of

1. State box
2. Decision box
3. Conditional box

State box

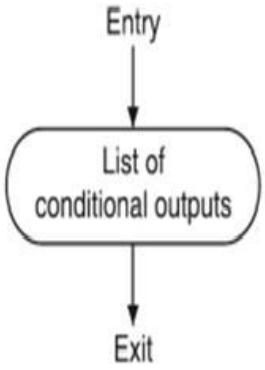


Decision box



Decision box.

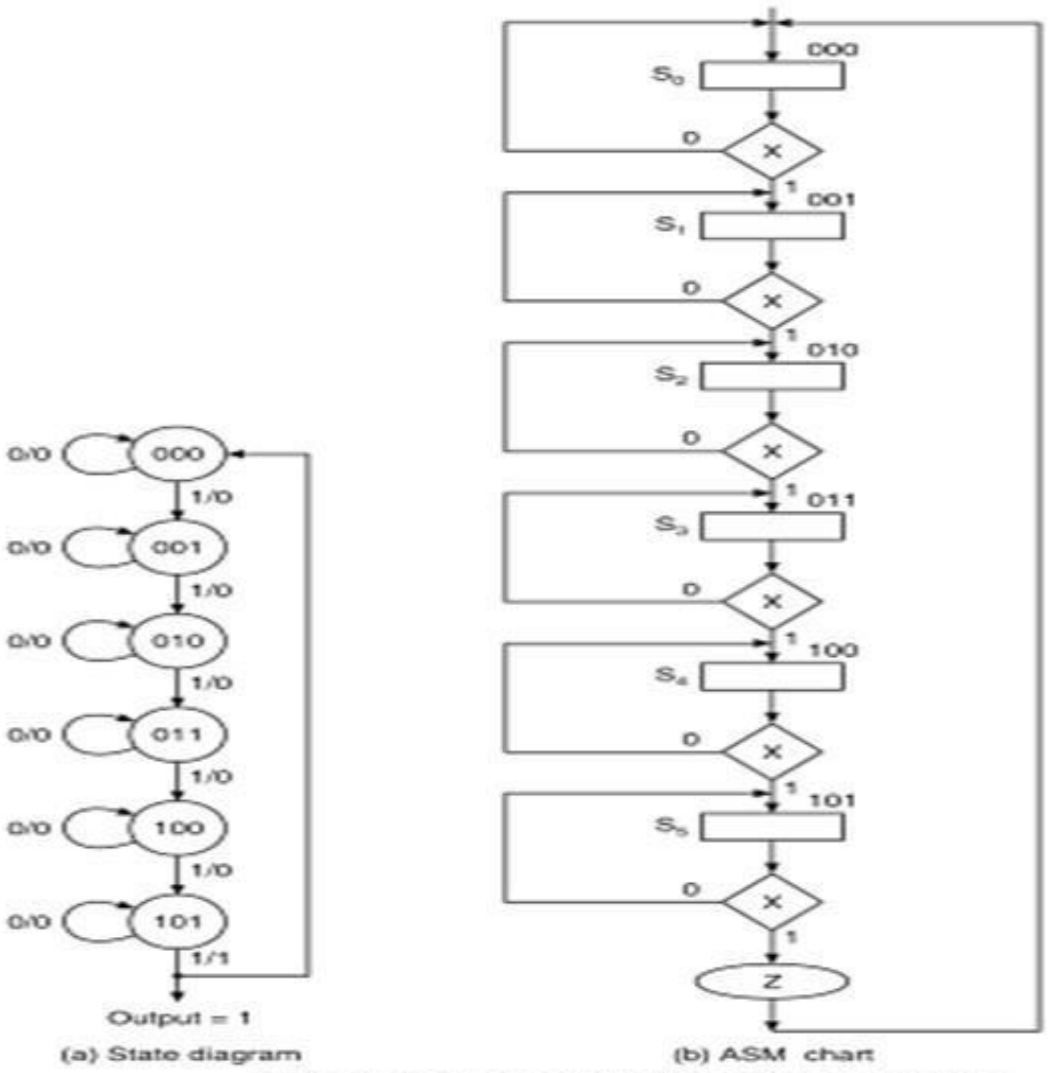
3. Conditional output box: The conditional output box is represented by a rectangle with rounded corners or by an oval with one input line and one output line. The outputs that depend on both the state of the system and the inputs are indicated inside the box.



Conditional output box.

SALIENT FEATURES OF ASM CHARTS

1. An ASM chart describes the sequence of events as well as the timing relationship between the states of a sequential controller and the events that occur while going from one state to the next.
2. An ASM chart contains one or more interconnected ASM blocks.
3. Each ASM block contains exactly one state box together with the decision boxes and conditional output boxes associated with that state.
4. Every block in an ASM chart specifies the operations that are to be performed during one common clock pulse.
5. An ASM block has exactly one entrance path and one or more exit paths represented by the structure of the decision boxes.
6. A path through an ASM block from entrance to exit is referred to as a link path.
7. The operations specified within the state and conditional output boxes in the block are performed in the datapath subsystem.
8. Internal feedback within an ASM block is not permitted. Even so, following a decision box or conditional output boxes, the machine may reenter the same state.
9. Each block in the ASM chart describes the state of the system during one clock pulse interval. When a digital system enters the state associated with a given ASM block, the outputs indicated within the state box become true. The conditions associated with the decision boxes are evaluated to determine which path or paths to be followed to enter the next ASM block.



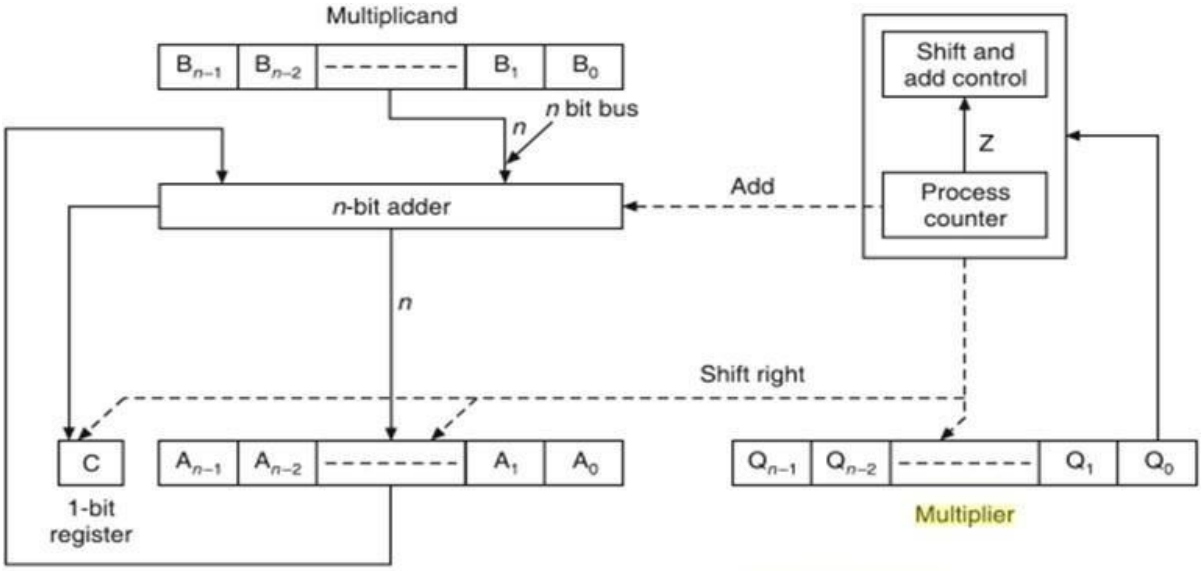
(a) State diagram (b) ASM chart

State diagram and ASM chart for mod-6 counter.

BINARY MULTIPLIER

1 1 0 1	←	13_{10} ... Multiplicand
1 0 1 0	←	10_{10} ... Multiplier
0 0 0 0	←	Partial product 1
1 1 0 1	←	Partial product 2
0 0 0 0	←	Partial product 3
1 1 0 1	←	Partial product 4
1 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	←	130_{10} ... Product

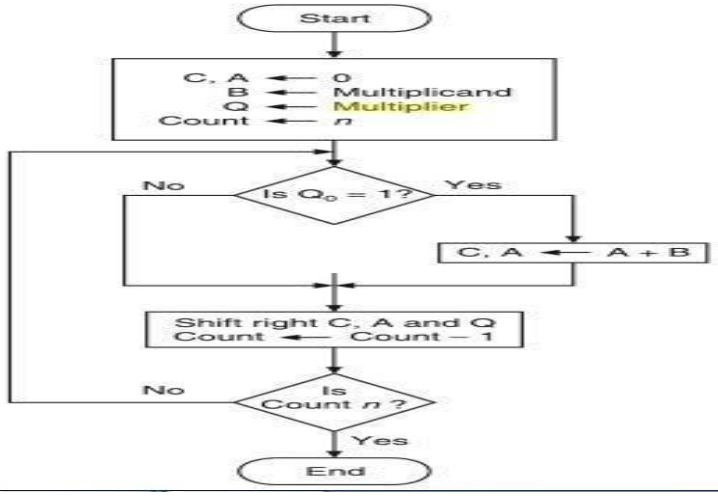
Data path subsystem for binary multiplier



Datapath subsystem for binary multiplier.

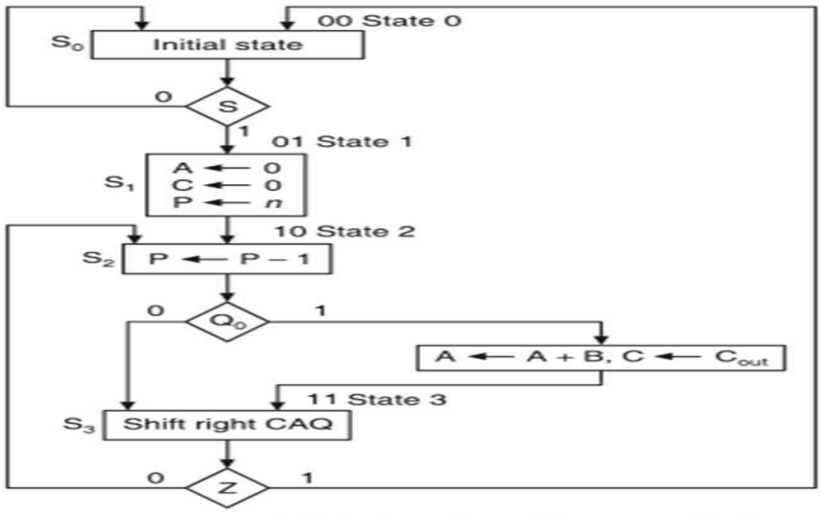
Multiplication Operation Steps

1. Bit 0 of multiplier operand (Q_0 of Q register) is checked.
2. If bit 0 (Q_0) is one then multiplicand and partial product are added and all bits of C, A and Q registers are shifted to the right one bit, so that the C bit goes into A_{n-1}, A_0 goes into Q_{n-1}, and $Q_0$is lost. If bit 0 (Q_0) is 0, then no addition is performed, only shift operation is carried out.
3. Steps 1 and 2 are repeated n times to get the desired result in the A and Q registers.



B	C	A	Q	Components	Count P
1 1 0 1	0	0 0 0 0	1 0 1 0	$B \leftarrow$ Multiplicand $Q \leftarrow$ Multiplier $A \leftarrow 0, C \leftarrow 0, P \leftarrow n$	100 (4)
1 1 0 1	0	0 0 0 0	1 0 1 0	$P \leftarrow P - 1$ $Q_0 = 0$	011 (3)
	0	0 0 0 0	0 1 0 1	C A Q shifted right	
1 1 0 1	0	1 1 0 1	0 1 0 1	$P \leftarrow P - 1$ $Q_0 = 1, A \leftarrow A + B$	010 (2)
	0	0 1 1 0	1 0 1 0	C A Q shifted right	
1 1 0 1	0	0 1 1 0	1 0 1 0	$P \leftarrow P - 1$ $Q_0 = 0,$	001 (1)
	0	0 0 1 1	0 1 0 1	C A Q shifted right	
1 1 0 1	1	0 0 0 0	0 1 0 1	$P \leftarrow P - 1$ $Q_0 = 1, A \leftarrow A + B$	000 (0)
	0	1 0 0 0	0 0 1 0	C A Q shifted right	

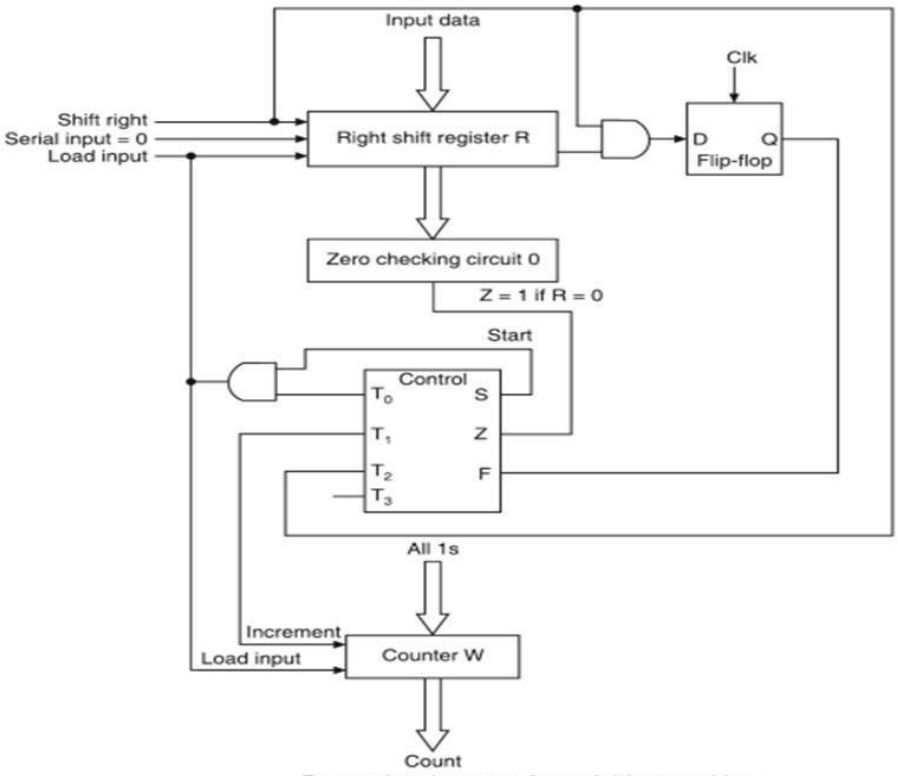
Flow chart for multiplication in a computer.



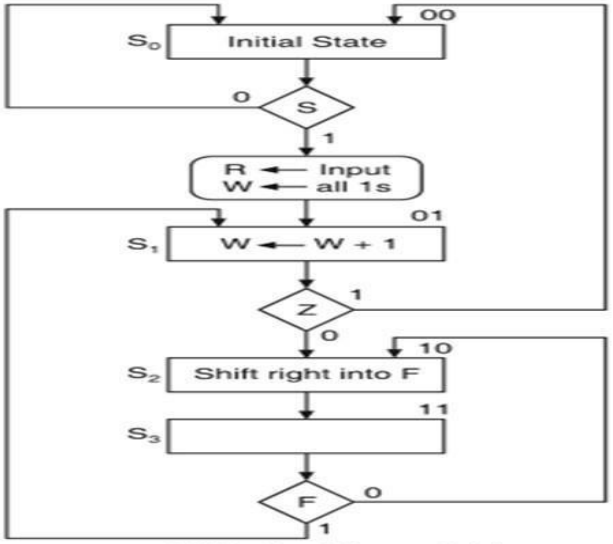
ASM chart for a binary multiplier.

ASM FOR WEIGHING MACHINE

In the algorithm for tabular minimization of Boolean expressions, we have to arrange the minterms in the ascending order of their weights. This is only one of the many situations when we have to examine the 1s of a given binary word. The weight of a binary number is defined as the number of 1s present in its binary representation.



Datapath subsystem for weighing machine.



ASM chart for weighing machine.

State S_0: Initially the weighing machine is in state S_0. The weighing process starts when start (S) signal becomes 1. While in state S_0, if S is 1, the clock pulse causes three jobs to be done simultaneously:

1. Binary number is loaded into register R.
2. W register is set to all 1s.
3. The machine is transferred to state S_1.

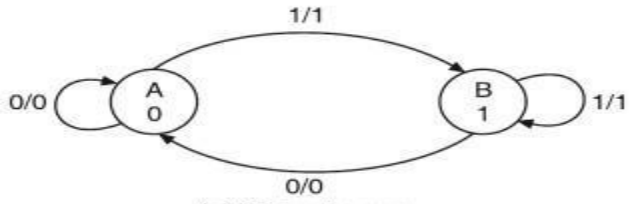
State S_1: While in state S_1, the clock pulse causes two jobs to be done simultaneously:

1. Counter W is incremented by 1(in the first round, all 1s become all 0s).
2. If Z is 0, the machine goes to the state S_2; if Z is 1, the machine goes to state S_0.

State S_2: In this state, register R is shifted right by 1 bit so that LSB goes into F and MSB is loaded with 0.

State S_3: In this state, the value of F is checked. If it is 0, the machine is transferred to the state S_2, otherwise the machine is transferred to state S_1. Thus, when F = 1, W is incremented.

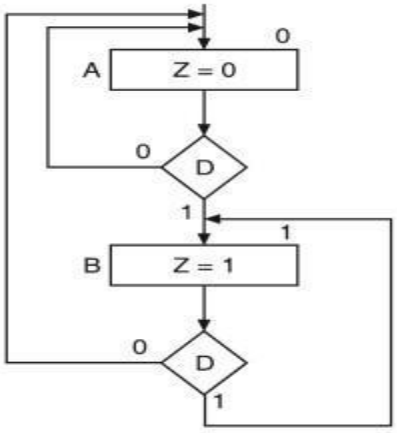
All the operations occur in coincidence with the clock pulse while in the corresponding state. Also notice that the register R should eventually contain all 0s when the last 1 is shifted into it.



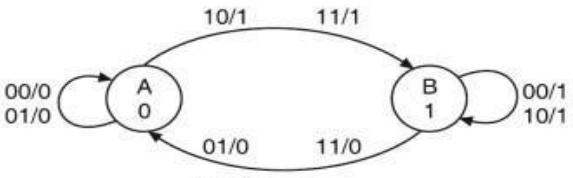
(a) State diagram

PS	NS, O/P Input D	
	D = 0	D = 1
A	A, 0	B, 1
B	A, 0	B, 1

(b) State table



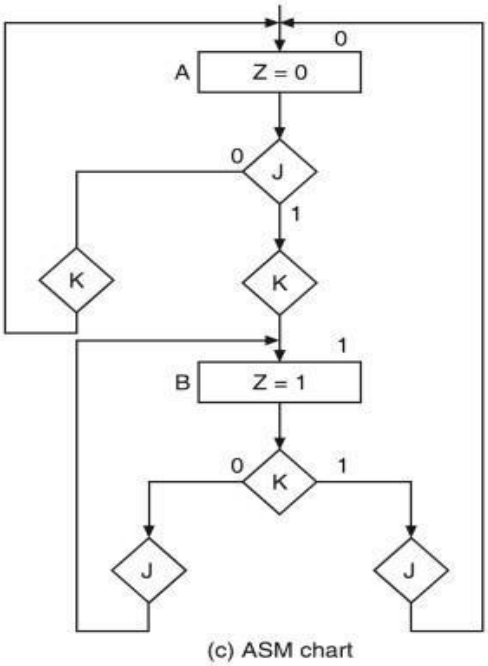
(c) ASM chart



(a) State diagram

PS	NS, O/P Input J-K			
	00	01	10	11
A	A, 0	A, 0	B, 1	B, 1
B	B, 1	A, 0	B, 1	A, 0

(b) State table



(c) ASM chart